HER2 Status in Breast Cancer: Changes in Guidelines for Interpretation
Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization. IASLC 19th World Conference on Lung Cancer Poster Session.

References


Front cover image: Representative example of HER2 protein expression and HER2 heterogeneity in breast cancer (Figs. 1 and 2), p. 755, p. 758.

Copyright 2020 by the Korean Society of Pathologists/Society for Cytopathology.

Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine

Aims & Scope

The Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine is an open forum for the rapid publication of major advancements in various fields of pathology, cytopathology, and biomedical and translational research. The journal aims to share new insights into the molecular and cellular mechanisms of human diseases and to report major advances in both experimental and clinical medicine, with a particular emphasis on translational research. The investigations of human cells and tissues using high-dimensional biology techniques and genomics and proteomics will be given a high priority. Articles on new cell biology are also welcome. The categories of manuscript include original articles, review and perspectives, case studies, job case reports, editorials, and editorials.

Subscription Information

To subscribe to this journal, please contact the Korean Society of Pathologists/Society for Cytopathology. Full text PDF files are also available at the official website (http://www.jpatholtm.org).

Aims & Scope

The Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine is an open forum for the rapid publication of major advancements in various fields of pathology, cytopathology, and biomedical and translational research. The journal aims to share new insights into the molecular and cellular mechanisms of human diseases and to report major advances in both experimental and clinical medicine, with a particular emphasis on translational research. The investigations of human cells and tissues using high-dimensional biology techniques and genomics and proteomics will be given a high priority. Articles on new cell biology are also welcome. The categories of manuscript include original articles, review and perspectives, case studies, job case reports, editorials, and editorials.

Subscription Information

To subscribe to this journal, please contact the Korean Society of Pathologists/Society for Cytopathology. Full text PDF files are also available at the official website (http://www.jpatholtm.org).

Aims & Scope

The Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine is an open forum for the rapid publication of major advancements in various fields of pathology, cytopathology, and biomedical and translational research. The journal aims to share new insights into the molecular and cellular mechanisms of human diseases and to report major advances in both experimental and clinical medicine, with a particular emphasis on translational research. The investigations of human cells and tissues using high-dimensional biology techniques and genomics and proteomics will be given a high priority. Articles on new cell biology are also welcome. The categories of manuscript include original articles, review and perspectives, case studies, job case reports, editorials, and editorials.

Subscription Information

To subscribe to this journal, please contact the Korean Society of Pathologists/Society for Cytopathology. Full text PDF files are also available at the official website (http://www.jpatholtm.org).

Aims & Scope

The Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine is an open forum for the rapid publication of major advancements in various fields of pathology, cytopathology, and biomedical and translational research. The journal aims to share new insights into the molecular and cellular mechanisms of human diseases and to report major advances in both experimental and clinical medicine, with a particular emphasis on translational research. The investigations of human cells and tissues using high-dimensional biology techniques and genomics and proteomics will be given a high priority. Articles on new cell biology are also welcome. The categories of manuscript include original articles, review and perspectives, case studies, job case reports, editorials, and editorials.

Subscription Information

To subscribe to this journal, please contact the Korean Society of Pathologists/Society for Cytopathology. Full text PDF files are also available at the official website (http://www.jpatholtm.org).

Aims & Scope

The Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine is an open forum for the rapid publication of major advancements in various fields of pathology, cytopathology, and biomedical and translational research. The journal aims to share new insights into the molecular and cellular mechanisms of human diseases and to report major advances in both experimental and clinical medicine, with a particular emphasis on translational research. The investigations of human cells and tissues using high-dimensional biology techniques and genomics and proteomics will be given a high priority. Articles on new cell biology are also welcome. The categories of manuscript include original articles, review and perspectives, case studies, job case reports, editorials, and editorials.

Subscription Information

To subscribe to this journal, please contact the Korean Society of Pathologists/Society for Cytopathology. Full text PDF files are also available at the official website (http://www.jpatholtm.org).
CONTENTS

REVIEWS

1 Standardized Pathology Report for Colorectal Cancer, 2nd Edition
Baek-hui Kim, Joon Mee Kim, Gyeong Hoon Kang, Hee Jin Chang, Dong Wook Kang, Jung Ho Kim, Jeong Mo Bae, An Na Sea, Ho Sung Park, Yun Kyung Kang, Kyung-Hwa Lee, Mee Yon Cho, In-Gu Do, Hye Seung Lee, Hee Kyung Chang, Do Youn Park, Hye Jeong Kang, Jin Hee Sohn, Mee Soo Chang, Eun Sun Jung, So-Young Jin, Eun-Sil Yu, Hye Seung Han, Youn Wha Kim

20 Tumor immune response and immunotherapy in gastric cancer
Yoonjin Kwak, An Na Seo, Hee Eun Lee, Hye Seung Lee

34 HER2 status in breast cancer: changes in guidelines and complicating factors for interpretation
Soomin Ahn, Ji Won Woo, Kyoungyul Lee, So Yeon Park

45 Molecular characteristics of meningiomas
Young Suk Lee, Youn Soo Lee

64 2019 Practice guidelines for thyroid core needle biopsy: a report of the Clinical Practice Guidelines Development Committee of the Korean Thyroid Association
Chan Kwon Jung, Jung Hwan Baek, Dong Gyu Na, Young Lyun Oh, Ka Hee Yi, Ho-Cheol Kang, Clinical Practice Guidelines Development Committee of the Korean Thyroid Association

ORIGINAL ARTICLES

87 Analysis of the molecular subtypes of preoperative core needle biopsy and surgical specimens in invasive breast cancer
Ye Sul Jeong, Jun Kang, Jieun Lee, Tae-Kyung Yoo, Sung Hun Kim, Ahwon Lee

95 Clinicopathologic characteristics of HER2-positive pure mucinous carcinoma of the breast
Yunjeong Jang, Hena Jung, Han-Na Kim, Youjeong Seo, Emad Alsharif, Seok Jin Nam, Seok Won Kim, Jeong Eon Lee, Yeon Hee Park, Eun Yoon Cho, Soo Youn Cho

103 Expression of female sex hormone receptors and its relation to clinicopathological characteristics and prognosis of lung adenocarcinoma
Jin Hwan Lee, Han Kyeom Kim, Bong Kyung Shin

Comparison of papanicolaou smear and human papillomavirus (HPV) test as cervical screening tools: can we rely on HPV test alone as a screening method? An 11-year retrospective experience at a single institution
Myunghee Kang, Seung Yeon Ha, Hyun Yee Cho, Dong Hae Chung, Na Rae Kim, Jungsuk An, Sangho Lee, Jae Yeon Seok, Juhyeon Jeong

CASE REPORT
Morule-like features in pulmonary adenocarcinoma associated with epidermal growth factor receptor mutations: two case reports with targeted next-generation sequencing analysis
Yoo Jin Lee, Harim Oh, Eojin Kim, Bokyung Ahn, Jeong Hyeon Lee, Youngseok Lee, Yang Seok Chae, Chul Hwan Kim

EDITORIAL
Papillary thyroid carcinoma variants with tall columnar cells
Chan Kwon Jung

Instructions for Authors for Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine are available at http://jpatholtm.org/authors/authors.php
Standardized Pathology Report for Colorectal Cancer, 2nd Edition

Baek-hui Kim1, Joon Mee Kim2, Gyeong Hoon Kang3, Hee Jin Chang4, Dong Wook Kang5, Jung Ho Kim3, Jeong Mo Bae1, An Na Seo1, Ho Sung Park1, Yun Kyung Kang3, Kyung-Hwa Lee3, Mee Yon Cho6, In-Gu Do11, Hye Seung Lee12, Hee Kyung Chang13, Do Youn Park14, Hyo Jeong Kang15, Jin Hee Sohn11, Mee Soo Chang16, Eun Sun Jung17, So-Young Jin18, Eunsil Yu19, Hye Seung Han20, Youn Wha Kim20

The Gastrointestinal Pathology Study Group of the Korean Society of Pathologists; 1Department of Pathology, Korea University Guro Hospital, Seoul; 2Department of Pathology, Inha University School of Medicine, Incheon; 3Department of Pathology, Seoul National University Hospital, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul; 4Department of Pathology, Research Institute and Hospital, National Cancer Center, Goyang; 5Department of Pathology, Eulji University Hospital, Eulji University School of Medicine, Daejeon; 6Department of Pathology, School of Medicine, Kyungpook National University, Daegu; 7Department of Pathology, Chonbuk National University Medical School, Jeonju; 8Department of Pathology, Seoul Paik Hospital, Inje University College of Medicine, Seoul; 9Department of Pathology, Chonnam National University Medical School, Gwangju; 10Department of Pathology, Yonsei University Wonju College of Medicine, Wonju; 11Department of Pathology, Kangbuk Samsung Hospital, Sungkyunkwan University School of Medicine, Seoul; 12Department of Pathology, Seoul National University Bundang Hospital, Seongnam; 13Department of Pathology, Kwon University College of Medicine, Busan; 14Department of Pathology, Pusan National University Hospital, Pusan National University School of Medicine, Busan; 15Department of Pathology, Asan Medical Center, University of Ulsan College of Medicine, Seoul; 16Department of Pathology, Seoul National University Boramae Hospital, Seoul National University College of Medicine, Seoul; 17Department of Pathology, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul; 18Department of Pathology, Soonchunhyang University Seoul Hospital, Soonchunhyang University College of Medicine, Seoul; 19Department of Pathology, Konkuk University Medical Center, Konkuk University School of Medicine, Seoul; 20Department of Pathology, Kyung Hee University College of Medicine, Seoul, Korea

The first edition of the ‘Standardized Pathology Report for Colorectal Cancer,’ which was developed by the Gastrointestinal Pathology Study Group (GIP) of the Korean Society of Pathologists, was published 13 years ago. Meanwhile, there have been many changes in the pathologic diagnosis of colorectal cancer (CRC), pathologic findings included in the pathology report, and immunohistochemical and molecular pathology required for the diagnosis and treatment of colorectal cancer. In order to reflect these changes, we (GIP) decided to make the second edition of the report. The purpose of this standardized pathology report is to provide a practical protocol for Korean pathologists, which could help diagnose and treat CRC patients. This report consists of “standard data elements” and “conditional data elements.” Basic pathologic findings and parts necessary for prognostication of CRC patients are classified as “standard data elements,” while other prognostic factors and factors related to adjuvant therapy are classified as “conditional data elements” so that each institution could select the contents according to the characteristics of the institution. The Korean version is also provided separately so that Korean pathologists can easily understand and use this report. We hope that this report will be helpful in the daily practice of CRC diagnosis.

Key Words: Colorectal neoplasms; Pathology report; Standardization; Protocol

Received: August 17, 2019 Revised: September 24, 2019 Accepted: September 26, 2019
Corresponding Author: Joon Mee Kim, MD, PhD, Department of Pathology, Inha University School of Medicine, 27 Inhang-ro, Jung-gu, Incheon 22332, Korea
Tel: +82-32-890-3987, Fax: +82-32-890-3464, E-mail: jmkpath@inha.ac.kr

The first edition of the ‘Standardized Pathology Report for Colorectal Cancer’ was developed by the Gastrointestinal Pathology Study Group of the Korean Society of Pathologists and published in the Korean Journal of Pathology (predecessor of the Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine) in 2006 [1]. Colorectal cancer (CRC), which was the fourth most common cancer in Korea at the time, is now the second most common cancer in Korea. Meanwhile, there have been many changes in the pathologic diagnosis of CRC, such as the diagnostic criteria for carcinoma, and pathologic findings included in the pathology report [1,2]. Molecular pathology tests for CRC have also become necessary tests, as targeted therapy and immunotherapy were introduced into the treatment of CRC. The existing standardization report does not reflect the recent changes in colon cancer diagnosis.

There has been considerable demand for the revision of the
standardized pathology report, which is used by many Korean pathologists. From September 2017 to October 2018, the committee for the revision of the report was organized, and after several discussions and meetings, the second edition of the ‘Standardized Pathology Report for Colorectal Cancer’ was completed. This new report is based on the previous report with reference to the College of American Pathologists (CAP) protocol, American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) 8th edition, World Health Organization (WHO) classification of tumors of the digestive system 5th edition, and International Classification of Diseases for Oncology (ICD-O) [3-6].

The purpose of this standardized pathology report is to enable standardized diagnosis and treatment of CRC patients and, furthermore, to help select the same patient group and exchange information in multicenter clinical trials or international studies. It would be desirable to include all the latest findings up to now in this report, but this would lead to an increase in the workload of the pathologist. In the current medical system of Korea, increased workloads cannot be appropriately reflected in the medical fee, which may lead this report to be impractical for Korean pathologists. Therefore, the basic pathologic findings and parts necessary for prognostication of CRC patients are classified as "standard data elements," and other prognostic factors and factors related to adjuvant therapy are classified as "conditional data elements" so that each institution can select the contents according to the characteristics of the institution. As with the first edition, we have written this in English for the internationalization of pathology reports. We also have restricted the use of abbreviations or numerical taxonomy so that we can keep track of future data elements even if the diagnostic criteria and classification methods change.

As The Korean Journal of Pathology has become an English-language journal named The Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine, this report was written in English, but the Korean version is also provided separately so that Korean pathologists can easily understand and use this report (Supplementary Material 1).

STANDARD DATA ELEMENTS FOR RESECTED COLORECTUM

All report forms mentioned in this document are shown in Table 1. If there are two or more tumors, the data elements should be listed for each tumor, starting with the tumor that has the deepest level of invasion. ‘Regional lymph node metastasis,’ ‘Associated findings,’ and ‘Separate lesions’ are noted only in the deepest tumor.

Histopathologic type of invasive carcinoma

Histologic classification of tumors is based on WHO classification (5th edition) [5]. Although most CRGs are “adenocarcinoma, not otherwise specified (NOS),” if there are other histologic variants, it is recommended to mention them separately. This is because some histologic variants may be associated with specific molecular alteration or patient prognosis [5,7]. Representative histologic types of CRC described in WHO classification and AJCC 8th edition are shown in Table 1 [4,5].

Mucinous adenocarcinoma and signet ring cell carcinoma can be diagnosed when extracellular mucins are over 50% of tumor areas and signet ring cells are over 50% of tumor component, respectively. At levels of 50% or less, it is recommended to describe the ratio of mucin or signet ring cells along with histologic type [5]. When patients received preoperative neo-adjuvant therapy, which may produce mucin, it is advisable to describe the diagnosis of the preoperative specimen [8]. Medullary carcinoma is a rare histologic type that requires differentiation from undifferentiated carcinoma and it is diagnosed when cancer cells appear as solid or sheet-like structures and lymphocytic infiltration is prominent with intraepithelial (tumor-infiltrating) lymphocytes and neutrophils [5,7]. Tumor cells of medullary carcinoma usually show abundant eosinophilic cytoplasm, vesicular nuclei, and prominent nucleoli [5]. Another rare histologic type, micropapillary adenocarcinoma, can be diagnosed when small tumor cell clusters are surrounded by empty spaces, resembling lymphatic or small vessel invasion [9-11]. Micropapillary adenocarcinoma has a high risk of lymph node metastasis and is frequently accompanied with poor prognostic factors such as lymphatic and vascular invasion [9-13]. However, CRC with pure micropapillary patterns are extremely rare and most micropapillary lesions coexist with another histologic type [5,14]. The WHO classification suggests that tumors consisting of 5% or more micropapillary component should be diagnosed as micropapillary adenocarcinoma [5]. However, the minimal proportion of micropapillary components required for the diagnosis of micropapillary adenocarcinoma is controversial, and our committee could not reach a consensus. Serrated adenocarcinoma is also a special subtype of CRC that is morphologically similar to serrated polyps and is characterized by neoplastic glands with prominent epithelial serrations, low nucleus-to-cytoplasm ratio, eosinophilic and abundant cytoplasm, and vesicular nuclei [5,15,16]. Although some studies have suggested diagnostic criteria for serrated adenocarcinoma [17], a consensus has not yet been reached. Adenosquamous carcinoma is diagnosed when an area of definite squamous differentiation is present in the tumor. Although the WHO classification sug-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard data elements</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Specimen type** | □ Right hemicolectomy  
□ Transverse hemicolectomy  
□ Left hemicolectomy  
□ Anterior resection  
□ Low anterior resection  
□ Abdominoperineal resection  
□ Subtotal/total colectomy  
□ Total proctocolectomy  
□ Transanal excision  
□ Endoscopic mucosal resection  
□ Other: (specify: ___________________ ) |
| **Histopathologic type of invasive carcinoma** | □ Adenocarcinoma, NOS  
□ Low-grade (well differentiated and moderately differentiated)  
□ High-grade (poorly differentiated)  
□ Mucinous adenocarcinoma  
□ Signet ring cell carcinoma  
□ Medullary carcinoma  
□ Serrated adenocarcinoma  
□ Microglandular adenocarcinoma  
□ Squamous cell (epidermoid) carcinoma (excluding upwardly spreading anal tumors)  
□ Adenosquamous carcinoma  
□ Small cell neuroendocrine carcinoma  
□ Large cell neuroendocrine carcinoma  
□ Mixed neuroendocrine-non-neuroendocrine neoplasm  
□ Undifferentiated carcinoma  
□ Other: (specify: ___________________ ) |
| **Location** | □ Cecum  
□ Ascending colon  
□ Hepatic flexure  
□ Transverse colon  
□ Splenic flexure  
□ Descending colon  
□ Sigmoid colon  
□ Rectosigmoid junction  
□ Rectum  
□ Other: (specify: ___________________ ) |
| **Gross type** | □ Fungating/polypoid  
□ Ulcerating  
□ Ulcerative  
□ Infiltrative  
□ Unclassifiable |
| **Tumor size** |  
□ □ □ cm |

Continued to the next page
• Kim B-h et al.

Table 1. Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard data elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perineural invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Not identified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-existing adenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Tubular/Tubulovillous/Villous adenoma (Low grade dysplasia/High grade dysplasia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Sessile serrated lesion (sessile serrated adenoma/polyp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Sessile serrated lesion (sessile serrated adenoma/polyp) with dysplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Traditional serrated adenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Other (specify: ___________________ )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Associated findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ Absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Tumor perforation (pT4a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Perforation (non-tumor perforation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Metastasis to one site or organ without peritoneal metastasis (pM1a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Metastasis to two or more sites or organs without peritoneal metastasis (pM1b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Metastasis to the peritoneal surface with or without other site or organ metastasis (pM1c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify metastatic sites or organs: __________________________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Separate lesions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ Absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Adenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Polyp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ GIST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Ulcerative colitis/Crohn’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specify: __________________________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditional data elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DNA mismatch repair immunohistochemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ MLH1: □ Positive (retained expression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Negative (loss of expression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ MSH2: □ Positive (retained expression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Negative (loss of expression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ PMS2: □ Positive (retained expression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Negative (loss of expression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ MSH6: □ Positive (retained expression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Negative (loss of expression)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary: DNA mismatch repair deficiency (was/was not) observed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Microsatellite instability (MSI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ MSI-stable (MSS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ MSI-low (MSI-L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ MSI-high (MSI-H)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KRAS mutation analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ No mutation detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Mutation detected (specify: example: c.35G&gt;A, p.Gly12Asp)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NRAS mutation analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ No mutation detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Mutation detected (specify: example: c.35G&gt;A, p.Gly12Asp)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BRAF mutation analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ No mutation detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ BRAF V600E (c.1799T&gt;A) mutation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Other BRAF mutation (specify: ___________________)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summary: DNA mismatch repair deficiency (was/was not) observed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditional data elements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Microsatellite instability (MSI)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ MSI-stable (MSS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ MSI-low (MSI-L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ MSI-high (MSI-H)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Comment: This report is intended to be applicable to endoscopic resection or transanal excision specimens as well as surgical resection of CRC. NOS, not otherwise specified; CRC, colorectal cancer.

Suggests a greater than 20% and 25% adenocarcinoma component or squamous cell carcinoma component, respectively, for the diagnosis of adenosquamous carcinoma in esophageal and gastric cancer, respectively, there is no standardized diagnostic criteria for adenosquamous carcinoma in terms of the squamous cell carcinoma component [5]. we recommend diagnosing adenosquamous carcinoma when the squamous cell carcinoma component is clearly seen in “more than occasional small foci” as described in the previous report [1]. Undifferentiated carcinoma is diagnosed when the epithelial tumor lacks morphological, immunohistochemical, and molecular evidence of specific differentiation [5]. Adenoma-like adenocarcinoma, also called villous adenocarcinoma, was first introduced as a histological subtype of CRC in the WHO 5th edition [5]. Adenoma-like adenocarcinoma is composed of villous adenoma-like well differentiated tumors in the invasive portion, showing pushing border and minimal desmoplasia [5]. Whether adenoma-like adenocarcinoma should be classified as a specific subtype of CRC is still controversial and has not been added as a subtype in this report.
Differentiation of tumors is determined by the area ratio of gland or tubule formation by tumor cells [7]. The degree of differentiation of the tumor is applicable to adenocarcinoma, NOS. This is because other histologic types show their own prognosis [7]. Recently, tumor differentiation has been shown to affect the prognosis of patients with mucinous adenocarcinoma [5,18]. However, standardized tumor grading of mucinous adenocarcinoma has not been presented yet. Tumor grading is preferably performed using a two-tiered system with low-grade and high-grade [5]. In the 3-tiered grading system, tumor differentiation is graded as well differentiated (> 95% gland formation), moderately differentiated (50%–95% gland formation), or poorly differentiated (< 50% gland formation). The “well- and moderately differentiated” grades correspond to low-grade, while “poorly differentiated” corresponds to high-grade of the two-tiered grading system [5,19].

**Location**

The location of the tumor follows the ICD-O classification [6]. The length of the cecum is approximately 6 cm and the length of the sigmoid colon is approximately 40 cm. The rectum begins at 1–2 cm above the dentate line and is 12–15 cm long. The upper third of the rectum is covered by peritoneum on the anterior and lateral sides, the middle third is covered by peritoneum on the anterior side, and the lower third is not covered by peritoneum. In this revision, “overlapping lesion of the colon” was removed from the tumor location section because it is practically not used in most institutions. When tumors are involved in two locations of the colon, the tumor epicenter and more involved area should be considered in the determination of tumor location.

**Gross type**

Superficial type is not recommended for describing tumor gross morphology, because superficial type could be defined by microscopic examination. Fungating/polypoid type can substitute most gross morphology of the previously established superficial type. Nevertheless, if superficial type is used, it should be applied to tumors that are confined to mucosa or submucosa and with tumor thickness of no more than two-fold thickness of adjacent mucosa. Other criteria for tumor gross types are the same as in the previous version. Fungating/polypoid, ulcerofungating, ulceroinfiltrative, and infiltrative gross types correspond to the Borrmann classification of gastric cancer.

**Tumor size**

The tumor size is expressed as the product of the longest axis and the length perpendicular to it. The depth of the tumor is measured with a microscope at the thickest point.

**Depth of invasion**

According to the AJCC 8th edition, “intraepithelial carcinoma” that is confined to the crypt epithelium and lacks invasion beyond the basement membrane is considered synonymous to high-grade dysplasia and is excluded from the pTis category. Intramucosal carcinoma that shows invasion into lamina propria with no penetration through the muscularis mucosa into the submucosa is assigned to pTis considering the negligible risk for metastasis [4]. The histopathologic features of intramucosal carcinoma are defined as follows: (1) infiltration of the stroma by either single or small clusters of tumor cells with basement membrane disruption; (2) a stromal response such as desmoplasia or inflammatory cell infiltrates around the invasion front; (3) definite nuclear anaplasia and severe glandular structural abnormality including marked glandular crowding or excessive branching and budding that endows high suspicion of basement membrane destruction (Fig. 1A, B) [20]. In comparison, high-grade dysplasia is diagnosed when the tumor gland shows (1) nuclear pleomorphism with loss of polarity, (2) architectural complexity of intraluminal cribriforming or necrosis, and (3) back-to-back fusion of multiple glands without lamina propria invasion. Low-grade dysplasia is used when the pseudostratified nucleus is seen without complex architectural change of the glands, regardless of the nuclear ratio to the cell length (Fig. 1C) (refer to ‘Pre-existing adenoma’). However, intraepithelial carcinoma of the colorectum had been classified as pTis in the AJCC 7th or earlier editions, while intraepithelial carcinoma of other gastrointestinal tracts except the colorectum is still diagnosed as pTis [4]. Therefore, we recommend minimizing the use of intraepithelial carcinoma or adenocarcinoma in situ in order to reduce confusion and suggest using high-grade dysplasia or intramucosal carcinoma for the diagnosis of mucosal high-grade lesions.

If there is a tumor at the site where the proper muscle has disappeared by ulceration, it is defined as suberosal infiltration of the tumor (pT3). If tumor cells approach the serosal surface by a gap of ≤ 1 mm with a fibroinflammatory reaction, scrupulous examinations using deeper sections and/or additional tissue blocks are needed to uncover serosal surface involvement [4,21]. In colorectal tumors, similar to other gastrointestinal organs, pT4 is subcategorized into pT4a and pT4b. Although pT4a is basically defined as direct involvement of the serosal surface (visceral peri-
tumor directly invades the adjacent organs or structures. For distal rectal tumors, tumors with involvement of the external sphincter are assigned to pT3, whereas those with the involvement of the levator ani muscle are assigned to pT4b.

The presence of tumor cells within the lymphatic or venous vessels is not considered when determining the depth of invasion. The presence of vascular invasion should be recorded in parentheses separately (e.g., invades proper muscle [involvement of subserosa by lymphatic emboli]). The skip metastasis of multiple lesions in mucosa or submucosa of the adjacent bowel is not classified as distant metastasis. The presence of a peritumoral abscess or acellular mucin pool in cancers with preoperative chemoradiotherapy has been known to be unrelated to patients’ prognosis in CRC, and also is not considered in determining the depth of invasion [22-24].

Endoscopic excision (endoscopic submucosal dissection/polypectomy) or transanal excision

Invasive adenocarcinomas arising in colorectal adenomas have been called “malignant polyps,” in which tumor cells penetrate through the muscularis mucosae into the submucosa. Independent prognostic factors that prompt further surgical treatment of endoscopically resected polyps are as follows: (1) poorly differentiated carcinoma, (2) tumors at or less than 1 mm from the resection margin, and (3) presence of lymphatic and/or venous vessel involvement. Submucosal invasion depth is also an important factor in determining subsequent surgical treatment, since a submucosal invasion depth of ≥ 1,000 µm in malignant polyps of sessile (non-pedunculated) morphology indicates a significantly increased risk for lymph node metastasis [25,26].

In this committee, measurement methods were discussed to reduce measurement error in submucosal invasion depth. Polyps are classified into pedunculated and nonpedunculated polyps. For pedunculated polyps, submucosal invasion is classified as ‘head,’ ‘neck,’ ‘stalk,’ and ‘beyond stalk’ according to the Haggitt classification, in which the neck of the polyp (level 2) is the reference point for measuring stalk invasion (Fig. 2A, B) [27,28]. In nonpedunculated polyps, when the muscularis mucosae is preserved, submucosal invasion depth is measured vertically from the lowest part of the muscularis mucosae. When the muscularis mucosae has been disrupted or has disappeared, the depth of submucosa invasion is measured from the imaginary line that is continuous from the residual muscularis mucosae of the neighboring mucosa (Fig. 2C, D) [29].
Resection margin

The distance from the proximal and distal resection margins is the length from the edge of the carcinoma to the nearest resection margin. In rectal cancer, the circumferential resection margin should be measured in the areas uncovered by peritoneum. After confirming the circumferential resection margin of the resected specimen, mark the margin with ink, and obtain sections including the site where the tumor is most deeply infiltrated. The involvement of carcinoma in the margin is finally assessed by microscopic examination. If the distance between circumferential resection margin and carcinoma (including lymph node, neural invasion, and intravascular tumor emboli) is 0.1 cm or less than 0.1 cm, the resection margin is regarded as positive. Circumferential margins of colon cancers other than rectal cancers can be reported when necessary.

Endoscopic excision (endoscopic mucosal resection/submucosal dissection/polypectomy) or transanal excision

This form is applied to the endoscopic resection (polypectomy, mucosal resection, and submucosal dissection) and trans-anal resection. The deep and horizontal margins are examined microscopically. Margin involvement by adenoma is reported in the horizontal margin. When it is impossible to evaluate the resection margins, such as in specimen fragmentation, it shall be marked as ‘not applicable.’

Regional lymph node metastasis

Diagnosis of regional lymph node metastasis is made according to the AJCC 8th edition. Although it is recommended to examine 12 or more lymph nodes for determination of accurate prognosis, pN0 can be used if fewer lymph nodes are available, but no lymph node metastasis is observed. Preoperative chemotherapy and radiotherapy can cause fewer lymph nodes to be harvested. Metastasis to lymph nodes other than regional lymph nodes should be diagnosed as distant metastasis and should not be included in lymph node metastasis numbers.

If the size of the metastatic tumor is less than 2 mm and more than 0.2 mm, it is classified as micrometastasis. If it is less than
0.2 mm, it is classified as isolated tumor cell [4]. A lymph node with micrometastasis is counted as a metastatic lymph node. Although isolated tumor cells are known to be associated with poor prognosis in some stages, pN0 is recommended in AJCC [4]. However, this is controversial and difficult to apply in routine pathologic diagnosis. Thus, we recommend that isolated tumor cells found on hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) slides are considered to be lymph node metastasis and included in the metastatic lymph node numbers, as in the first edition of this report [1].

Tumor deposits are tumor nodules observed separately from the primary tumor in the subserosa, mesentery, and perirectal tissues, regardless of size, shape, and border. Lymph node, vessel, and neural invasions are excluded from tumor deposits [4]. If a blood vessel or nerve structure is observed within the tumor nodule, it should be regarded as a blood vessel invasion or a neural invasion. Elastic stain or immunohistochemical stain (IHC), such as smooth muscle actin, may be helpful in differentiating tumor deposits. pN1c is used when there is no lymph node metastasis, regardless of the invasion depth of the primary tumor, and when there is a tumor deposit. If there are metastatic lymph nodes, tumor deposits are not included in the number of positive lymph nodes. Care should be taken if the patient received preoperative therapy, because regressed residual tumor in subserosa or perirectal soft tissue can be seen as a tumor deposit.

**Lymphatic (small vessel) invasion and venous invasion**

Identification of lymphatic invasion by the tumor has been recognized as a predictor of lymph node metastasis [26], and identification of venous invasion is a well-known independent prognostic indicator [30]. IHC for D2-40 may be performed additionally to identify endothelial cells because it can be difficult to differentiate the lymphatic vessel from retraction artifacts on H&E sections (Fig. 3A). It is commonly difficult to distinguish lymphatic vessels from blood vessels on H&E sections. Thus, it is considered as lymphatic (small vessel) invasion when the tumor cells involve small vessels, such as lymphatics, capillaries, and postcapillary venules (Fig. 3B), whereas venous invasion is when the tumor cells involve large vessels with an identifiable smooth muscle layer or elastic lamina (Fig. 3C) [31]. This should be considered lymphatic (small vessel) invasion if the size of the involved vessel corresponds to that of small vessel, even though there are red blood cells in the involved vessel. Additionally, special stains for elastic fiber or IHCs for CD31, D2–40, and smooth muscle actin can be used if necessary. It is recommended extramural venous invasion be reported separately from the intramural venous invasion, because the former is an adverse prognostic factor.

---

**Fig. 3.** Histologic features of lymphatic invasion and venous invasion. (A) Tumor clusters with retraction artifacts can be misinterpreted as lymphatic invasion (H&E stain and D2-40 immunohistochemical stain). (B) Tumor invasion of small vessels is considered as lymphatic invasion (H&E stain and D2-40 immunohistochemical stain). (C) Tumors involving vessels with identifiable smooth muscle layer or elastic lamina are considered as venous invasion.
and an independent risk factor for liver metastasis [30].

**Perineural invasion**

Perineural invasion has been known as an independent predictor of poor prognosis in CRC [32]. Perineural invasion is an essential element of the pathologic report for CRC and it can be assessed on routine H&E sections. Although there is no clear definition of perineural invasion, it is considered as perineural invasion when the tumor cells invade any of the three layers of nerve sheath, around the nerve, as well as into the nerve [35].

**Pre-existing adenoma**

Two major categories of CRC precursor lesions include conventional adenomas and serrated lesions [34]. According to the latest WHO classification of tumors of the digestive system, conventional adenomas are morphologically classified into tubular (villous component < 25%), tubulovillous (villous component 25%–75%), or villous (villous component > 75%) adenomas based on the proportion of tubular and villous architectures in an adenoma [5]. By definition, all conventional adenomas show dysplastic epithelium, and dysplasia in conventional adenomas can be graded as low-grade or high-grade [5]. High-grade dysplasia is characterized by architectural complexities (e.g., intraluminal cribriforming or necrosis, or back-to-back fusion of multiple glands), nuclear pleomorphisms, loss of nuclear polarity, and increased nuclear-to-cytoplasmic ratio (Fig. 4A). Features of low-grade dysplasia include non-complex architecture, pseudostratified/elongated nuclei with hyperchromasia, and preserved cellular polarization (Fig. 4B). The most important part of the distinction between high-grade and low-grade dysplasia is a complex glandular structure formation of tumor glands without invasion of lamina propria. Dysplastic glands only showing cytologic atypia without complex structural change are not diagnosed as high-grade dysplasia. In the previous edition, we recommended the diagnosis of high-grade dysplasia when there are three contiguous dysplastic gland structures showing high-grade features, which include cytologic atypia. According to the previous edition, there was a tendency to diagnose high-grade dysplasia with only focal cytologic atypia, but tumors with glandular structural abnormalities were sometimes missed as low-grade dysplasia. So, in this edition, complex structural abnormality is described as an essential part of the diagnosis of high-grade dysplasia. When high-grade and low-grade dysplasia components are mixed in a conventional adenoma, the adenoma should be diagnosed as high-grade dysplasia [1].

Serrated lesions include hyperplastic polyps (HPs), sessile serrated lesions (SSLs, formerly called sessile serrated adenoma/polyp), and traditional serrated adenomas (TSAs), according to the latest WHO classification [5]. However, the classification and diagnostic criteria of serrated lesions have continuously changed [35,36]. Based on a comprehensive review of the latest WHO classification (2019) [5], expert panel recommendations from the US (2012) [35], and UK guidance (2015) [36], we recommend the use of three diagnostic terms for serrated lesions as pre-existing adenomas in CRC: SSL, SSL with dysplasia (SSLD), and TSA. Because HP is regarded as a benign, non-precancerous lesion, it is excluded from serrated lesions as a pre-existing adenoma of CRC.

All SSLs are regarded as premalignant lesions, and morphologic dysplasia in SSLs can be present or absent. In comparison to SSL without dysplasia, SSLD is regarded to have a higher risk of progression into carcinoma. SSL is morphologically characterized by crypt luminal serrations extending to the crypt base, horizontal growth of the crypt, and asymmetrical proliferation with typical dilated/branching bases of crypts (Fig 4C). The diagnosis of SSL can be made when there is at least one typical architecturally distorted crypt [5,35]. Morphologic changes in SSLD can be diverse, and multiple morphologic patterns can be seen in a single lesion. Structural changes in SSLD include villous change, elongation of crypts, crowding of crypts, cribriform formation, and excessive decrease of luminal serration. Cytologically, dysplastic cells can show conventional adenoma-like dysplasia (so-called intestinal dysplasia) or round atypical nuclei with prominent nucleoli (serrated dysplasia) [5]. Loss of MLH1 expression is frequently found in SSLD and MLH1 immunohistochemical staining may help to define dysplasia [37]. However, the grading system for SSLD has not been suggested yet. Therefore, we simply recommend the presence or absence of dysplasia, regardless of dysplasia subtype or grade, for the description of SSL as a pre-existing adenoma of CRC.

All TSAs are regarded as precancerous dysplastic lesions, although classification or grading systems for dysplasia in TSAs have not been established. Thus, we recommend the term TSA without any description of dysplasia as a pre-existing adenoma of CRC. TSA is morphologically characterized by broad-topped, sharply-invaginated luminal serration, tall columnar cells with abundant eosinophilic cytoplasm, pencillate nuclei, and ectopic crypt formation (Fig. 4D). TSAs can frequently be found as mixed lesions accompanying other serrated lesions or conventional adenomas [37,38].

In the case of a premalignant lesion consisting of two or more different histologic types of conventional adenomas and/or serrated lesions, the lesion can be referred to as a mixed adenoma.
Associated findings

Tumor perforation is associated with a poor outcome in CRC \cite{39}. It is known that perforation of the uninvolved colon proximal to an obstructing tumor can cause peritonitis or sepsis, and is associated with poor prognosis. Distant metastasis is now divided into metastasis to one site or organ (pM1a), or metastasis to two or more sites or organs (pM1b), in the absence of peritoneal surface metastasis according to the AJCC 8th edition. Peritoneal surface metastasis is classified as pM1c \cite{4}.

Separate lesions

When there are lesions other than colorectal cancer, such as separate adenomas, polyps, gastrointestinal stromal tumors, or inflammatory bowel disease, they can be denoted in this section.

Fig. 4. Histologic features of premalignant lesions of the colorectum. (A) Tubular adenoma with high-grade dysplasia. Note the architectural complexity including cribriform pattern or back-to-back fusion of dysplastic glands. (B) Tubulovillous adenoma with low-grade dysplasia. Note the retained cellular polarity with pseudostratified, elongated nuclei. (C) Sessile serrated adenoma without dysplasia. Note the dilated base of crypts. (D) Traditional serrated adenoma. Note the deep-invaginated pattern of crypt serration with hypereosinophilic cytoplasm and pencillated nuclei.

CONDITIONAL DATA ELEMENTS FOR RESECTED COLORECTUM

**Tumor budding**

Tumor budding is a well-known independent adverse prognostic factor of CRC \cite{40}. Tumor budding components in the pathologic report can be potentially helpful in the decision-making process for the management of patients with CRC. First, in patients presenting with endoscopically resected submucosal invasive CRC, the presence of tumor budding is positively correlated with increased risk of lymph node metastases \cite{26,41,42}. Therefore, patients with tumor budding can be potential surgical candidates. Second, stage II CRC patients with high-grade tumor budding show worse disease-free survival than those with no or low-grade tumor budding. Therefore, high-grade tumor budding may be useful for screening patients who need adjuvant therapy \cite{43}. Finally, the presence of tumor budding in pre-operative bi-
opsies can aid in the selection of high-risk rectal cancer patients for neoadjuvant therapy [44,45]. As mentioned above, in endoscopically resected pT1 CRC patients and stage II CRC patients, it is recommended to include tumor budding in the pathologic report.

The International Tumor Budding Consensus Conference (ITBCC) held in 2016 has recommended the following criteria for evaluation of tumor budding [46]. (1) Tumor budding is defined as a single tumor cell or a cell cluster containing ≤4 tumor cells. (2) Tumor budding should be assessed in the hotspot at the invasive tumor front (in a field measuring 0.785 mm², which corresponds to a 20 × objective lens with an eyepiece having a field number that is 20 mm in diameter) chosen after a review of the available slides. (3) Tumor budding can be assessed on H&E slides. IHC for keratin can be helpful in evaluation of obscure cases showing a peritumoral inflammatory infiltrate on H&E-stained slides, which is difficult to distinguish from reactive stromal cells. In such cases, IHC enables better visualization of tumor budding and superior reproducibility and inter-observer agreement [47]. However, keratin also stains apoptotic bodies and cellular debris, which should not be misinterpreted as tumor budding [46,48].

We also recommend a 3-tier grading system for reporting of tumor budding. However, this grading system is not an absolute standard. Measuring and reporting the number of tumor bud-

## Tumor border configuration

Regarding tumor border configuration, there is currently no recommendation in the AJCC 8th edition, nor in the CAP protocol for CRC, and only a brief mention in the WHO classification [3-5]. Although the assessment of tumor border configuration can be easily carried out using H&E slides, inter-observer reproducibility is lacking due to ambiguous definitions [49]. For these reasons, the tumor border configuration was excluded from this standardization report.

## Completeness of total mesorectal excision

Total mesorectal excision is a surgical technique that dissects within the areolar plane outside the visceral mesorectal fascia to remove rectum [50]. A large number of non-randomized studies have shown that if total mesorectal excision is appropriately performed, then adequate resection margin is secured, and local recurrence rate is reduced. The surface of the fresh rectal specimen is examined circumferentially, and the completeness of the mesorectal excision is scored according to the worst area, as below [3,4,7].

- Complete: Mesorectum is totally resected. The surface of the specimen is smooth and there is no coning towards the distal margin (there is no surface defect greater than 0.5 cm in depth).
- Nearly complete: There is irregularity of the mesorectal surface. The surface defect is greater than 0.5 cm, but proper muscle layer is not exposed (except for levator ani muscles).
- Incomplete: Severe mesorectal defects down to the muscularis propria. Muscularis propria is exposed.

## Preoperative chemoradiotherapy

Preoperative chemoradiotherapy (CRT) followed by curative resection with TME has been established as a standard treatment for patients with locally advanced rectal cancer [51,52]. Tumor regression after preoperative CRT has an important role that can improve patient outcomes and the potential for achieving no residual tumor status [53-55]. Many studies have been performed to perceive a practical and applicable tumor regression grading (TRG) system [4,53-59]. The tumor regression after CRT was assessed only in the primary tumor and the nodal status was not included in the assessment of the TRG system [4]. The TRG system recommended in the previous edition of the “standardized pathology report for colorectal cancer” used a descriptive 3-tier system and can be easily translated into the Mandard and Dworak TRG scoring system [1]. However, even with a descriptive TRG system there is an inter-observer variation between pathologists, and this descriptive TRG system is not widely used and is often confused with other existing TRG systems. To overcome this, we suggest a new TRG system, which can be widely used in the pathologic practice, based on the AJCC 8th edition and CAP cancer protocol (Fig. 5) [3,4].

The number of blocks taken is dependent on the size of the residual tumor. If the tumor is grossly visible, a minimum of 4 paraffin blocks should be taken from the tumor, including samples from its closest point to the nearest margin. However, if the tumor is ill-defined and impossible to distinguish from fibrous stromal tissue or the tumor bed size is less than 2.0 cm, the entire embedding of the macroscopically identifiable tumor bed or entire scar area is recommended, orientated from proximal to distal in 0.4-cm levels. Careful examination of the residual tumor cells is essential and is mandatory for assessment of complete response.
after CRT in CRC patients. Histologically, the tumor bed is characterized by abundant fibrotic stroma with a moderate number of mononuclear inflammatory cells or foamy macrophages. In these areas, there may be edema or mucinous or myxoid changes of the stroma or even areas of necrosis. The presence of mucin lakes without viable tumor cells (acellular mucin) should be defined as a pathologically complete response. If it is difficult to differentiate between giant cells or fibroblast and tumor cells, it may be helpful to perform serial H&E sections, mucin staining, or cytokeratin IHC in TRG grading.

**EGFR immunohistochemistry**

Expression of epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) by IHC has been reported in 25% to 90% of patients with CRC [60-64]. In almost all of the initial studies regarding the efficacy of targeted therapies with cetuximab or panitumumab in CRC patients, evidence of EGFR expression by IHC was essential for the application of therapeutic agents [65]. However, subsequent studies have shown no correlation between the degree of EGFR expression and the therapeutic responses to these drugs [66-68]. Thus, immunohistochemical expression of EGFR is not considered a predictor of response to EGFR-targeted drugs, and a number of recent studies do not include EGFR expression in selection criteria for anti-EGFR targeted therapy. However, in Korea, EGFR IHC has been routinely performed on CRC tissues of patients with stage IV CRC who are candidates for EGFR-targeted therapy according to the reimbursement criteria proposed by the Health Insurance Review and Evaluation Center, which mandates patient selection based on EGFR testing prior to application of EGFR-targeted therapy. In conclusion, whether immunohistochemical expression of EGFR accurately predicts the patients who would benefit from EGFR-targeted drugs has not been clearly established.
been demonstrated until now.

**DNA mismatch repair immunohistochemistry**

IHC for the detection of DNA mismatch repair (MMR) proteins in CRC samples is a simple and useful tool to determine MMR deficiency, which is caused by germline mutation in one of the MMR genes (MLH1, MSH2, MSH6, or PMS2) or promoter CpG island hypermethylation of the MLH1 gene [69-71]. MMR deficiency results in a high level of microsatellite instability (MSI-H) that is characterized by genome-wide length alterations of DNA microsatellite repeat sequences [72]. Because MLH1 dimerizes with PMS2 in order to conduct DNA MMR function, when a mutation or promoter hypermethylation in MLH1 occurs in CRC, IHC expression of both MLH1 and PMS2 is negative in the tumor [69,70]. Similarly, as MSH2 dimerizes with MSH6, MSH2-mutated CRCs show negativity for both MSH2 and MSH6 [69,70]. However, when mutations in PMS2 or MSH6 occur, expression of only PMS2 or MSH6, respectively, is lost, with the expression of MLH1 and MSH2 remaining intact [69,70].

Nuclear staining should be observed for the IHC detection of MMR positivity. MMR deficiency is determined when the nuclear expression of at least one of the MMR proteins is not observed in tumor cells (Fig. 6).

MMR IHC is a well-established histopathological screening tool for Lynch syndrome or sporadic MSI-H molecular subtype in CRCs [69-71]. Previous data and meta-analyses have shown that MMR deficiency (or MSI-H) in CRCs is significantly associated with both a better prognosis as well as resistance to 5-fluorouracil-based adjuvant chemotherapy [72-74]. Moreover, recent evidence has indicated that MMR deficiency (or MSI-H) is a significant predictor of a positive response to immunotherapy using immune checkpoint blockade in solid tumors [75,76]. Therefore, the pathologic reporting of MMR or microsatellite instability (MSI) status is strongly recommended for all surgically resected CRC cases.

**Immunoscore**

Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) in tumor tissue has emerged as a strong prognostic factor in CRC. Many previous studies have consistently shown that TIL count is a strong prognostic factor with a high TIL count being significantly associated with a better prognosis in CRC [77]. Several investigations have reported that TIL count can be a strong predictor of patient prognosis in CRC regardless of both TNM staging and MSI [78,79]. The anti-tumor functions of TILs are conducted mainly by cytotoxic T cells. Thus, IHC for CD3+ and CD8+ T cells has been used as one of the major methods for the evaluation of TILs in CRC [78,80].

Based on the accumulating data, a TIL-based methodology named “immunoscore” has been under development and validation since 2012 by an international consortium led by Dr. Jerome Galon (http://www.immunoscore.org) [80,81]. The steps for determining the immunoscore of a CRC are as follows: (1) selection of a representative tumor section, (2) IHC for CD3 and CD8 on the tumor section, (3) evaluation of CD3+ and CD8+ cell densities at two tumor areas—invasive margin (IM) and tumor center (TC), (4) dichotomous categorization (high vs. low) of each of the four CD3/CD8 variables (CD3+ IM, CD3+ TC, CD8+ IM, and CD8+ TC), (5) determination of the final immunoscore based on the four CD3/CD8 variables (e.g., no “high” variable indicates I0; one “high” variable indicates I1; two “high” variables indicate I2; three “high” variables indicate I3; four “high” variables indicate I4).

Although there is strong evidence for the prognostic significance of the immunoscore in CRC, there is still a lack of global consensus regarding the application of immunoscore in terms of indication, evaluation, and classification. One of the critical limitations of the current immunoscopying system is the absence
of a standard cut-off value for the high versus low categorization of CD3+ or CD8+ cell density. It is expected that a consensus established from digitalized image-based, automated analyses will aid the establishment of a standardized immunoscoring system.

**Microsatellite instability**

Microsatellite instability (MSI) is a condition of genome-wide alterations in the number of repeat nucleotide(s) caused by a defective mismatch repair (dMMR) system in the context of germline mutations in mismatch repair genes, including MLH1, MSH2, MSH6, and PMS2, or MLH1 promoter hypermethylation [72]. MSI testing is recommended for all CRC patients for the screening of Lynch syndrome in NCCN guidelines and guidelines from the American Society for Clinical Pathology (ASCP)/College of American Pathologists (CAP)/Association for Molecular Pathology (AMP)/American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO) [82]. Moreover, MSI-H is associated with better prognosis but poor therapeutic response to 5-fluorouracil-based cytotoxic chemotherapy [83,84]. Recently, MSI-H is considered as a predictive marker for PD-1 inhibitor-based cancer immunotherapy [75,85].

The gold standard method to evaluate MSI is the capillary gel electrophoresis, which compares the length in polymerase chain reaction (PCR) products of mono- or di-nucleotide repeats between cancer tissue and normal tissue. The Bethesda panel is composed of two mononucleotide repeat markers (BAT-25 and BAT-26) and three dinucleotide repeat markers (D5S346, D2S123, and D17S250), while the quasimonomorphic mononucleotides panel is composed of five mononucleotide repeat markers (NR-21, NR-24, NR-27 [or Mono-27], BAT-25, and BAT-26) [86,87]. Real-time PCR can be an alternative method for MSI evaluation in quasimonomorphic mononucleotides panel. Cancers classified as MSI-H should undergo immunohistochemistry of mismatch repair genes to screen for Lynch syndrome. If the BRAF V600E mutation is detected in MSI-H CRCs with MLH1 loss, Lynch syndrome can be ruled out [88]. Because MSI corresponds to dMMR, immunohistochemistry of mismatch repair proteins (MLH1, MSH2, MSH6, and PMS2) could be acceptable for an alternative method to capillary gel electrophoresis. The results of the MSI testing using the Bethesda panel are reported as MSI-H, MSI-low, and MSI-stable (MSS) if the tumor show instability in at least two, only one, and none of the 5 markers, respectively [87]. In determination of MSI using the quasimonomorphic mononucleotide panel, there is a controversy regarding the cut-off of MSI-H (≥3/5 or ≥2/5) [89,90].

**KRAS and NRAS mutation analysis**

The extended RAS mutation test is a molecular test for the detection of mutations in exons 2 to 4 of KRAS and NRAS genes [82,91]. It is widely known that EGFR blockers improve survival in patients with metastatic CRCs. However, mutations of exons 2 to 4 of KRAS and NRAS genes are associated with resistance to EGFR blockers. Thus, European Society for Medical Oncology (ESMO) guidelines for metastatic CRCs, NCCN guidelines, and ASCP/CAP/AMP/ASCO guidelines recommend extended RAS mutation tests in patients with metastatic CRCs [82,91-93]. Besides, a point mutation of KRAS exon 2 is associated with poor prognosis in CRCs [94-98]. Sanger sequencing, pyrosequencing, and real-time PCR-based methods can be used for extended RAS mutation testing. Next generation sequencing (NGS) panels for solid tumors should include KRAS and NRAS tests in South Korea. The presence or absence of nucleotide and amino acid changes in KRAS and NRAS exons 2–4 should be reported with appropriate nomenclature.

**BRAF mutation analysis**

BRAF V600E mutations are observed in approximately two-thirds of MSI-H CRCs caused by MLH1 promoter hypermethylation, however, it never occurs in Lynch syndrome [99]. Thus, if the MSI-H CRCs harbor the BRAF V600E mutation, we can exclude Lynch syndrome. Genetic tests for germline mutation of mismatch repair genes are not indicated in MSI-high CRCs with the BRAF V600E mutation [88].

Of the molecular subtypes generated by MSI and BRAF/KRAS mutations, MSS CRCs with BRAF V600E mutations were associated with the worst prognosis. However, the association between BRAF V600E mutations and worse prognosis is weakened by the presence of MSI-H, because MSI-H CRCs with BRAF V600E mutations showed no difference in survival compared with MSS CRCs with wild-type KRAS/BRAF [95-98]. Hence, MSI tests and BRAF mutation tests should be performed in CRC patients. Two retrospective studies showed that the BRAF V600E mutation is associated with shorter relapse-free survival and overall survival in metastatic CRC patients that underwent liver resection [98,100].

Some studies reported that the BRAF V600E mutation is associated with poor therapeutic response to EGFR blockers. However, it is still controversial whether the BRAF V600E mutation is an independent predictive marker for EGFR blockers [101,102]. 2017 National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) guidelines recommend BRAF V600E mutation testing for metastatic CRC patients; however, ASCP/CAP/AMP/
ASCO and ESMO guidelines for metastatic CRCs do not recommend BRAF V600E mutation testing for metastatic CRC [82,91].

Sanger sequencing, pyrosequencing, and real-time PCR-based methods can be used for BRAF mutation testing. NGS panels for solid tumors should include BRAF tests in South Korea. The presence or absence of nucleotide and amino acid changes in BRAF exon 15 should be reported. Appropriate nomenclature should be used.

Supplementary Materials
The Data Supplement is available with this article at https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2019.09.28.

ORCID
Baek-hui Kim: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-6793-1991
Joon Mee Kim: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-1355-4187
Gyeong Hoon Kang: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-2380-6675
Hee Jin Chang: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-2263-2247
Dong Wook Kang: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-4300-3469
Jung Ho Kim: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-6031-3629
Jeong Mo Bae: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-0462-3072
An Na Seo: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-6412-3067
Ho Sung Park: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-4879-874X
Yun Kyung Kang: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-2075-4665
Kyung-Hwa Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3935-0361
Mee Yon Cho: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-7955-4211
In-Gu Do: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-7832-7116
Hye Seung Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-1667-7986
Hee Kyung Chang: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-4843-5316
Do Youn Park: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-7641-1509
Hyo Jeong Kang: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-5285-8282
Jin Hee Sohn: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-4735-3853
Mee Soo Chang: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-0948-799X
Eun Sun Jung: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-8451-939X
So-Young Jin: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-9900-8322
Eunsil Yu: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-5474-9744
Hye Seung Han: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3591-9995
Youn Wha Kim: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-8259-5620

Author Contributions
Conceptualization: BHK, JMK, GHK, HJC, SYJ, ESJ, YWK, MSC, JHS, EY.
Writing—original draft preparation: HSP, ANS, JHK, IGD, YKK, MYC, JMK, DWK, JMB, BHK, HSL, KHL.
Writing—review & editing: BHK, JMK, GHK, HJC, DWK, JHK, JMB, ANS, HSP, YKK, KHL, MYC, IGD, HSL, HKC, DYP, HJK, JHS, MSC, ESJ, SYJ, EY, HSH, YWK.

Conflicts of Interest
G.H.K., J.H.K., and H.S.L., contributing editors of the Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine, were not involved in the editorial evaluation or decision to publish this article. All remaining authors have declared no conflicts of interest.

Funding
No funding to declare.

REFERENCES
9. Verdu M, Roman R, Calvo M, et al. Clinicopathological and molecular characterization of colorectal micropapillary carcinoma. Mod...


65. de Castro-Carpeno J, Belda-Iniesta C, Casado Saenz E, Hernandez-Aguido E, Feliu Batlle J, Gonzalez Baron M. EGFR and colon cancer:
2013; 369: 1023-34.


대장암 병리보고서 기재사항 표준화 2판


대한병리학회 소화기병리학 연구회에서는 많은 병리의사들이 사용하고 있는 대장암 병리보고서 기재사항 표준화의 개정에 대한 요구가 많다고 판단하였고, 2017년 9월부터 2018년 10월까지 개정작업을 위한 소위원회를 구성하여 수차례의 논의를 거친 후 <대장암 병리보고서 기재사항 표준화 2판>을 완성하였다. 기존의 표준화 지침을 기반으로, 미국병리학회 프로토콜, American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) 8판, World Health Organization (WHO) 분류 5판, 종양학 국제 질병 분류(International Classification of Diseases for Oncology) 등을 참고하였다[3-6].

표준화된 대장암 병리 보고서의 목적은 대장암 환자들의 표준화된 진단과 진료가 가능하게 하는 것이고, 국내 다기관 임상시험이나 국외 연구에서도 동일한 환자를 선택하고 정보를 교환하는 데 도움을 줄 수 있도록 하는 것이다. 현재까지의 최신지견을 모두 수록하면 좋겠지만 이럴 경우 병리의사의 업무량 증가를 가져오게 되고, 현행 의료체계에서는 병리진단의 세부적인 업무량 증가가 의료수가에 부정적인 영향을 미칠 수 있다고 보았다. 따라서, 이전 보고서와 같이 대장암 병리 진단에서 양의 변이학적 소견과 예후 판정에 필요한 부분들은 표준 기재사항으로 분류하였고, 그 외에 예후 관련 인자들이나 보조 치료에 필요한 사항들은 선택 기재사항으로 분류하여, 각 기관에서는 기관의 특성에 맞추어서 내용들을 선택하여 사용할 수 있도록 하였다. 초판과 마찬가지로 병리보고서의 국제화를 위하여 영어로 기재하도록 하였으며, 앞으로 각 항목의 판독 기준이나 분류법이 바뀌더라도 추후에 추적할 수 있도록 약자나 숫자로 된 분류법의 사용을 제한하였다. 대한병리학회가 Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine의 영문 논문으로 바뀌게 되면서 기재하는 보고서는 영문으로 작성하게 되었으나, 병리의사들이 쉽게 이해하고 사용할 수 있도록 하기 위해서 한글판을 따로 작성하였다.

제체 대장의 표준 기재사항

종양이 두 개 이상 있는 경우에는 가장 침윤이 깊은 종양부터 각각의 종양에 대해 각 항목들을 적되, 국소립프절전이(regional lymph node metastasis), 연관소견(associated findings), 독립병변(separate lesions) 항목은 가장 깊은 종양에만 적는다.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Specimen type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Right hemicolectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transverse hemicolectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Left hemicolectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior resection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low anterior resection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominoperineal resection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subtotal/total colectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total proctocolectomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transanal excision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endoscopic mucosal resection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other: (specify: ______________________________ )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
해설: 본 기재사항은 수술로 절제한 대장/직장암뿐만 아니라 내시경 절제 혹은 경항문절제 표본에서도 동일하게 적용할 수 있도록 하였다.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Histopathologic type of invasive carcinoma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ Adenocarcinoma, NOS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ low-grade (well differentiated and moderately differentiated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ high-grade (poorly differentiated)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Mucinous adenocarcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Signet ring cell carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Medullary carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Serrated adenocarcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Micropapillary adenocarcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Squamous cell (epidermoid) carcinoma (excluding upwardly spreading anal tumors)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Adenosquamous carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Small cell neuroendocrine carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Large cell neuroendocrine carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Mixed neuroendocrine-non-neuroendocrine neoplasm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Undifferentiated carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Other: (specify: ________________________ )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

해설: 종양의 조직학적 유형은 WHO 분류 5판을 기본적으로 따른다[5]. 비록 거의 대부분의 대장 및 직장암은 샘암종(adenocarcinoma, not otherwise specified [NOS])이지만, 다른 조직학적 이형이 섞여 있는 경우에 대해 따로 언급하는 것을 권장한다. 이는 어떤 조직학적 이형은 특이한 분자유전학적 특징과 환자의 예후와 관련 있을 수 있기 때문이다[5,7]. WHO 분류와 AJCC 8판에 기술된 대장 및 직장암의 대표적인 조직학적 유형은 위의 표와 같다[4,5].

점액 샘암종(mucinous adenocarcinoma)과 인환세포암종(signet ring cell carcinoma)의 경우 세포 외 점액과 인환세포가 각각 종양의 50%를 초과할 때 진단할 수 있다. 만약 50% 이상인 경우 주조직학적 유형과 함께 점액과 인환세포의 비율을 기술해 주는 것을 권장한다[5]. 주의할 점은, 수술전 전보조치료를 받은 경우 점액을 생성할 수 있으므로, 이런 경우 수술 전 병리검체의 진단을 기술하는 것을 권장한다[8]. 수질암종(medullary carcinoma)은 드문 조직학적 유형으로 미분화암종(undifferentiated carcinoma)과의 감별을 요하고, 암세포내 림프구나 호중구 침윤이 현저하며 그 사이사이 암세포가 고형성 또는 판(sheet)형태로 보이는 경우 진단한다[5,7]. 수질암종의 종양 세포들은 보통 호산성의 풍부한 세포질과 수포성 핵, 저명한 암소포를 보여준다[5]. 다른 드문 조직학적 유형인 미세유두 샘암종(micropapillary adenocarcinoma)은 작은 종양세포 군집 주위로 간질의 빈 공간이 존재하여 림프관 또는 미세혈관을 침윤한 것처럼 보이는 경우 진단할 수 있다[9-11]. 미세유두 삼암종의 경우 림프절 전이의 위험도가 높은 것으로 알려져 있으며 림프관 침윤이 현저한 경우나 간질 침윤의 경우는 더욱 주의를 요한다[9-13]. 하지만, 미세유두의 특성만 있는 대장 및 직장암은 아주 극히 드물며, 하나의 다른 조직유형에서 미세유두의 이형이 공존하는 경우가 대부분이다[5,14]. WHO 분류에서는 미세유두 암형이 전체 종양의 5% 이상일 경우 미세유두 삼암종으로 진단하도록 되어 있으나, 아직까지 미세유두 삼암종의 진단을 위한 표준화된 미세유두 이형의 비율은 논란의 여지가 있어서, 본 소위원회에서는 의견 일치에 도달하지 못하였다[5]. 톱니형 삼암종(serrated adenocarcinoma)은 현저한 상피의 톱니 모양을 가진 톱니모양병변과 유사한 형태를 가지는 삼암종으로, 낮은 암-세포질 비율을 가지며 붉은 풍부한 세포질과 수포성 핵을 보이는 특징을 가지고 있다[5,13,16]. 일부 연구에서 톱니형 삼암종의 진단 기준을 제시하고 있으나[17], 아직까지 톱니형 삼암종의 진단 기준에 대한 일치된 기준은 제시되지 않았다. 샘편평세포암종(adenosquamous carcinoma)은 분명한 변
평생피 암종부분이 확실히 보여야 진단할 수 있다. WHO 분류에서는 식도와 위의 종양에서는 샘암종과 폐렴세포암종 분화를 보이는 부분이 각각 20%와 25% 이상일 경우 폐렴세포암종을 진단하도록 하고 있다[5]. 그러나 대장에서는 이 비율이 제시되지 않아 본 위원회에서는 이전 보고서의 내용과 같이 폐렴세포암종 부분이 “more than occasional small foci”일 때 샘폐렴세포암종을 진단하도록 권고한다[1]. 미분화암종은 형태학적 소견과 면역염색, 분자병리 소견을 종합하여도 상피성 분화외에는 특정 분화를 보이지 않을 경우 진단한다[5]. 샘종양 샘암종(adenoma-like adenocarcinoma)은 융모샘암종(villous adenocarcinoma)라고도 불리우며, WHO 5판에 대장암의 조직학적 아형으로 처음 도입되었다[5]. 샘종양 샘암종은 종양의 침윤성 부위의 50% 이상이 융모형 샘종양 같은 좋은 분화를 보이는 암종으로, 평창성 경계(pushing border)를 가지고 섬유조직형성(desmoplasia)이 거의 관찰되지 않는다[5]. 샘종양 샘암종을 대장암의 특정 아형으로 분류해야 하는지는 아직 논란이 있기 때문에 본 보고서에서 아형으로 추가하지 않았다.

종양의 분화도는 샘 구조를 만드는 면적으로 결정하며, 이러한 종양의 분화도는 샘암종(adenocarcinoma, NOS)의 조직학적 유형을 보이는 경우에 적용한다[7]. 이는 다른 조직학적 유형은 그들 고유의 예후의 특징을 가지고 있기 때문이다[7]. 최근 점액 삼암종 또한 분화도가 예후 결정에 중요하다는 것이 밝혀졌고 있으나, 분화도를 결정하기 위한 표준화된 기준은 제시되지 않고 있다[5,18]. 종양의 분화도는 저등급(low-grade)와 고등급(high-grade)의 두 단계로 나누는 것을 권장한다[5]. 기존의 분화도를 나누는 기준은 신구조를 만드는 면적이 95%를 초과하면 고등급형 샘암종, 50%–95%면 중등급형 샘암종, 50% 미만이면 저등급형으로 3단계였으나, 두 단계 분화 등급에서 고등급화형 중등급화형은 저등급, 저분화형은 고등급으로 분류한다[5,19].

### Location

- [ ] Cecum
- [ ] Ascending colon
- [ ] Hepatic flexure
- [ ] Transverse colon
- [ ] Splenic flexure
- [ ] Descending colon
- [ ] Sigmoid colon
- [ ] Rectosigmoid junction
- [ ] Rectum
- [ ] Other: (specify: ______________________________ )

### 해설: 위치는 ICD-O의 분류를 따른다[6]. 평장의 길이는 대략 6 cm이고 암소 장장의 길이는 40 cm이다. 장장은 항문연의 12–15 cm 상방부터 처장선의 1–2 cm 상방까지이다. 장장의 상부 1/3은 앞쪽과 양측면이 복막에 둘러싸여 있으며, 장장의 중간 1/3은 앞쪽이 복막에 둘러싸여 있다. 장장의 하부 1/3은 복막에 둘러싸인 부분이 없다. 이번 개정에서 중복병변(overlapping lesion) 분화는 실제로 사용이 많지 않아 삭제하였다. 종양이 대장의 두 부분(subsite) 이상을 침범하였을 때는 종양의 중 심과 더 많이 침범한 부위를 판단하여 분류한다.

### Gross type

- [ ] Fungating/polypoid
- [ ] Ulcerofungating
- [ ] Ulceroinfiltrative
- [ ] Infiltrative
- [ ] Unclassifiable
해설: 표재형(superficial type)은 현미경에서만 관찰할 수 있는 침윤 정도의 깊이로 정의되기 때문에 사용하기를 권고하지 않는다. 표재형으로 기술된 폴립들 대부분이 융기형/폴립형(fungating/polypoid type)으로 분류될 수 있다. 만약 표재형을 쓴다면, 일본의 육안 분류와 같이 점막이나 점막하층에 국한되어 있고, 종양의 두께가 주변 점막의 2배 이하일 경우에만 쓰도록 한다. 나머지 분류는 이전 판과 같이 융기형/폴립형, 궤양융기형(ulcerofungating), 궤양침윤형(ulceroinfiltrative), 침윤형(infiltrative), 미분류형(unclassifiable)이며, 위암의 보르만(Borrmann) 분류법과 동일하다.

Tumor size

______ × ______ × ______ cm

해설: 종양의 크기는 가장 긴 축의 길이와 이에 수직인 길이의 곱으로 표시한다. 종양의 깊이는 가장 두꺼운 곳에서 현미경으로 측정한다.

Depth of invasion

- Intramucosal carcinoma (pTis)
- Tumor invades the submucosa (pT1)
- Tumor invades the muscularis propria (pT2)
- Tumor invades through the muscularis propria into pericolorectal tissue (pT3)
- Tumor directly invades or adheres to adjacent organs or structures (pT4a)

해설. AJCC 8판에 따르면 기저막 내부에 국한된 상피내암종(intraepithelial carcinoma)은 고등급이형성(high grade dysplasia)과 동의어로 분류되며 pTis에 포함되지 않는 것으로 변경되었다. 고유판(lamina propria)을 침윤하나 점막근육(muscularis mucosae)을 넘지 않는 점막내암종(intramucosal carcinoma)이 전이 위험이 없는 암종인 pTis에 해당된다[4]. 점막내암종은 (1) 단일 세포나 세포군집이 기저막파열을 동반하며 고유판 침윤을 보일 때, (2) 섬유조직형성(desmoplasia)이나 염증세포침윤을 보이는 고유판 변화가 있을 때, (3) 복합한 역형성을 가지는 세포가 심한 쌍구조 이상(marked glandular crowding, excessive branching and budding)을 보여서 기저막파열이 의심되는 경우로 진단할 수 있다(Fig. 1A, B) [20]. 이에 비하여 고등급이형성은 세포핵이 비정형을 보이면서 복합한 쌍구조 이상(intraluminal cribriforming or necrosis, back-to-back fusion of multiple glands)이 있을 때 진단하며, 복잡한 쌍구조 이상 없이 중첩된 핵이 보일 때는 세포질의 친화성에 대한 비율이 상관없이 저등급이형성(low grade dysplasia)으로 분류하는 Fig. 1C) (pre-existing adenoma 참조). AJCC 8판에서는 대장결장의 상피내암종을 고등급이형성과 동의어로 설명하면서 pTis에서 제외하였지만,AJCC 7판 이전에는 상피내암종이 pTis로 분류되어 있었고, 대장암을 제외한 다른 소화기 암종에서는 제외한 pTis로 진단되고 있다[4]. 따라서 본 연구에서도 환자를 관리할 때 상피내암종이나 제자리샘암종(adenocarcinoma in situ)의 사용을 최소화하고, 고등급이형성과 점막내암종의 이분화된 진단을 사용하기를 권장한다.

궤양에 의해 근육층이 소실된 부위에 종양이 있으면 장막하 침윤(pT3)으로 판정한다. 만일 장فاق과 장막의 거리가 1 mm 미만이고 염증이 동반되어 있으면 연속절편이나 추가 블록을 제작하여 주의깊게 검사한 후에도 장막 침범이 없으면 pT3로 한다[4,21]. 다른 장기와 동일하게 pT4는 pT4a와 pT4b로 구분한다. 알 śro근방장으로 노출되어 있다면 알عرو근방장에 불과하여 융기형에서 증액이 섞여 염증 등의 반응을 동반하는 경우 pT4a로 분류한다. 그러나 상행 및 하행 결장의 후부와 하부 직장과 같이 장막이 없는 부위에서는 pT4a를 적용할 수 없다. 알عرو근방장이 장막을 뚫고 인접한 장기를 침윤하였을 때는 pT4b로 구분하고 침범 장기를 기록한다. 직장암의 경우, 바깥항문조임근(external sphincter muscle) 침범은 pT3로 분류하지만 항문을
립근(levator ani muscle) 침범이 있으면 pT4b로 한다.

립프관 혹은 정맥혈관 내에 국한된 암세포는 침윤 깊이에 해당하지 않으며 별도로 괄호안에 기록한다(invades proper muscle [involvement of subserosa by lymphatic emboli]). 주변점막이나 점막하층에 다수의 병변으로 나타나는 건너뛰 전이(skip metastasis)는 원칙적으로 분류하지 않는다. 종양 주변에 농양이 동반되는 경우나 수술 전 항암치료 후 암세포 비동반(암세포가 없는) 정맥 응영이가 관찰되는 경우는 예후 영향이자가 아닌 것으로 알려져 있으며, 이러한 조직학적 소견은 침윤 깊이를 평가하는데 고려대상이 아니다[22-24].

[Endoscopic excision (Endoscopic submucosal dissection/polypectomy) or transanal excision]

☐ Tumor invades the lamina propria with no extension through muscularis mucosae (pTis)
☐ Tumor invades the submucosa (pT1)

For sessile lesion:
Distance of tumor from muscularis mucosae: _________ mm

For pedunculated lesion:
Haggitt level (head, neck, stalk, beyond stalk)
Distance of tumor invasion in stalk: _________ mm

해설: 악성 폴립(malignant polyp)은 육안적으로 생종성 폴립모양이지만, 생암종 세포가 점막하층 이상을 침범한 폴립을 일컫는 것이며, 내시경적으로 절제된 폴립에서 (1) 고등급암(poorly differentiated carcinoma)의 존재, (2) 절제면과의 거리가 1 mm 이하, (3) 림프관/혈관 침범이 있는 경우 추가적인 수술이 요구된다. 점막하층 침윤 깊이도 림프절 전이의 위험을 예측할 수 있는 소견으로써 무경성 폴립에서 암의 침윤 깊이가 1 mm (1,000 μm) 이상일 경우 림프절 전이 위험이 높다고 알려져 있다[25,26].

본 소위원회에서는 점막하층 침윤 깊이의 측정오차를 줄이기 위하여 측정 방법에 대해 논의를 하였다. 유경성 폴립과 무경성 폴립으로 구분하여, 유경성 폴립은 점막하층 침윤을 Haggitt level (head, neck, stalk, beyond stalk)로 구분하며[27,28], 폴립의 목 부위(level 2)가 침윤을 측정하는 기준이 된다(Fig. 2A, B). 무경성 폴립의 점막하층 침윤에서는 점막근층이 보존된 경우, 점막근층의 가장 하단 부위로부터 수직으로 측정한다. 점막근층이 불확실한 경우에는 주변 점막근층으로부터 자연스럽게 연결되는 가상의 선을 그어 측정하도록 권장한다(Fig. 2C, D)[29].

Resection margin

Proximal margin
☐ Free from carcinoma
☐ Involved by carcinoma

Distal margin
☐ Free from carcinoma
☐ Involved by carcinoma

Circumferential margin (rectum only)
☐ Free from carcinoma
☐ Involved by carcinoma

Safety margin: proximal _________ cm, distal _________ cm, circumferential _________ cm
해설: 근위와 원위 절제연으로부터의 거리(safety margin)는 육안적으로 암종의 가장자리에서 가장 가까운 절제연까지의 길이를 cm 단위로 표기한다. 직장암의 경우 환상절제연 평가는 장막으로 덮여 있지 않은 직장간막 절단면을 대상으로 하는 것이며, 장막으로 덮여 있는 표면은 환상절제연이 아니므로 주의한다. 절제된 검체의 환상절제연을 확인하여 잉크 등으로 표시한 후 종양이 가장 깊이 침윤한 곳을 포함한 절편을 채취한다. 환상절제연과 암종(립프절, 신경, 혈관내 종양 포함) 사이의 거리가 0.1 cm 이하인 경우 절제연을 양성으로 표기하고, 0.1 cm를 초과하는 경우에 음성으로 표기한다(3,4).

해설: 내시경절제(폴립절제, 점막절제, 점막하층박리) 및 항문경유절제를 포함한다. 현미경적으로 심부절제연(deep margin)과 점막절제연(horizontal margin)을 검사하여 암종의 침범이 있는 경우 양성, 없는 경우 음성으로 표기한다. 점막절제연은 생존의 침범 여부를 표기한다. 조각절제된 검체 등 절제연의 평가가 불가능한 경우 평가할 수 없음으로 표기한다.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Endoscopic excision (Endoscopic mucosal resection/ submucosal dissection/polypectomy) or transanal excision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deep margin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Free from carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Involved by carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Horizontal margin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Free from carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Involved by carcinoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Involved by adenoma: (specify grade: _______________ )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety margin: deep _________ cm, horizontal _________ cm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

해설: 국소 림프절 전이의 진단은 원칙적으로 AJCC 8판을 따른다(4). 정확한 예후 판정을 위해 12개 이상의 림프절을 검사하기를 권장하지만, 그보다 적은 수의 림프절을 검사하였더라도 모든 림프절에 전이가 없다면 pN0로 판정할 수 있다. 수술 전 항암, 방사선 치료를 한 경우에는 박리되는 림프절 수가 적을 수 있다. 국소 림프절 이외의 림프절로의 전이는 원격 전이로 판정하고, 림프절 전이 숫자에는 포함시키지 않아야 한다.

립프절로 전이된 종양의 크기가 2 mm보다 작고 0.2 mm이상인 경우 미세전이(micrometastasis)로 분류하고, 0.2 mm보다 작은 경우 고립종양세포(isolated tumor cell)로 분류한다(4). 미세전이가 있는 림프절은 림프절 전이가 있는 것으로 판단한다. 고립종양세포는 일부 병기에서 나쁜 예후와 관련이 있음이 알려져 있지만 AJCC 8판에서는 pN0로 평가하도록 권장하고 있다(4). 그러나, 이 부분은 논쟁의 여지가 있고, 실제 진단에서도 적용하기 어려운 점이 있다. 그래서, 우리는 기재사항 표준화 1판에서와 같이 H&E 슬라이드에서 발견된다면, 전이 종양의 크기가 0.2 mm보다 작은 고립종양세포도 림프절 전이로 판단하고 전이 림프절 숫자에 포함하기를 권장한다.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regional lymph node metastasis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ No metastasis in all _______ regional lymph nodes (pN0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Metastasis to _______ out of _______ regional lymph nodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pN _______</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

해설: 국소 림프절 전이의 진단은 원칙적으로 AJCC 8판을 따른다(4). 정확한 예후 판정을 위해 12개 이상의 림프절을 검사하기를 권장하지만, 그보다 적은 수의 림프절을 검사하였더라도 모든 림프절에 전이가 없다면 pN0로 판정할 수 있다. 수술 전 항암, 방사선 치료를 한 경우에는 박리되는 림프절 수가 적을 수 있다. 국소 림프절 이외의 림프절로의 전이는 원격 전이로 판정하고, 림프절 전이 숫자에는 포함시키지 않아야 한다.

립프절로 전이된 종양의 크기가 2 mm보다 작고 0.2 mm이상인 경우 미세전이(micrometastasis)로 분류하고, 0.2 mm보다 작은 경우 고립종양세포(isolated tumor cell)로 분류한다(4). 미세전이가 있는 림프절은 림프절 전이가 있는 것으로 판단한다. 고립종양세포는 일부 병기에서 나쁜 예후와 관련이 있음이 알려져 있지만 AJCC 8판에서는 pN0로 평가하도록 권장하고 있다(4). 그러나, 이 부분은 논쟁의 여지가 있고, 실제 진단에서도 적용하기 어려운 점이 있다. 그래서, 우리는 기재사항 표준화 1판에서와 같이 H&E 슬라이드에서 발견된다면, 전이 종양의 크기가 0.2 mm보다 작은 고립종양세포도 림프절 전이로 판단하고 전이 림프절 숫자에 포함하기를 권장한다.
종양침전물(tumor deposit)은 장막하층, 장간막, 직장주변 조직에서 원발종양과 분리되어 관찰되는 림프절, 혈관, 신경 침범이 아닌 종양 체결을 의미하며, 크기가 모양, 경계의 형태에 관련 없이 판단한다[4]. 이런 종양 체결 내부에 혈관 또는 신경 구조물이 관찰된다면 혈관 침범이나 신경 침범으로 판단해야 한다. 탄력섬유 특수염색(elastic stain)이나 smooth muscle actin 등의 면역조직화학 염색이 감별이 되도록 도움이 될 수 있다. 종양의 침윤 깊이에 상관없이, 림프절 전이가 없고 종양침전물이 있을 경우 pN1c로 진단한다. 림프절 전이가 있는 경우 종양침전물은 림프절 개수에 포함하지 않는다. 수술 전 항암, 방사선 치료를 한 경우 종양퇴행에 의한 변화로 장막하 혹은 직장주변 조직의 종양이 종양침전물처럼 보이는 경우가 있으니 주의해야 한다.

### Lymphatic (small vessel) invasion
- □ Not identified
- □ Present

### Venous invasion
- □ Not identified
- □ Present
  - □ Intramural
  - □ Extramural

해설: 림프관침범(lymphatic invasion)은 림프절 전이를 예측할 수 있는 인자이고[26], 정맥침범(venous invasion)은 잘 알려진 독립적 예후인자이다[30]. H&E 염색에서 림프관(lymphatic vessel)은 뒤당김인공물(retraction artifact)과 감별이 어려울 수 있고, 이 경우 내피세포의 확인을 위해 D2-40 면역조직화학염색(immunohistochemistry)을 추가로 시행할 수 있다(Fig 3A). H&E 염색으로 림프관과 혈관을 구별할 수 없는 경우가 혼합때문에 림프관, 모세혈관 및 모세혈관이후 세정맥과 같이 작은 맥관을 침범한 경우는 림프관침범으로(Fig 3B), 근육층 또는 탄력판이 있는 큰 맥관을 침범한 경우는 정맥침범으로 간주한다[31](Fig. 3C). 침범된 맥관 내에 직혈구가 관찰되더라도 맥관의 크기가 작은맥관(small vessel)이면 림프관침범으로 판단한다. 필요한 경우 탄력섬유를 확인하기 위한 특수염색이나 CD31, D2-40, smooth muscle actin과 같은 면역조직화학염색을 추가로 시행할 수 있다. 정맥침범중 백질 정맥 침범은 대장직장암의 불량한 예후 및 간 전이와 연관된 독립적 예후 인자이므로 따로 표기하는 것을 권장한다[30].

### Perineural invasion
- □ Not identified
- □ Present

해설: 신경침범(perineural invasion)은 대장직장암에서 나쁜 예후를 나타내는 독립적인 예후인자로 알려져 있다[32]. 이는 병리보고서의 표준기재 사항이고 H&E 염색 슬라이드에서 평가한다. 신경침범의 기준은 명확하지 않으나, 종양세포가 신경 집(nerve sheath) 세 중 어느 하나라도 침범하거나 신경 둘레를 침범한 경우 신경침범으로 판단한다[33]. 종양세포가 신경 내에 존재하는 경우(intraneural invasion)도 신경침범에 포함시켜 기록한다.
해설: 대장암 전구병변의 두 가지 주요 카테고리에는 전형적 샘종(conventional adenoma)과 톱니모양병변(serrated lesion)이 있다[34]. WHO 분류에 따르면, 전형적 샘종은 형태학적으로 관형(tubular) 및 융모형(villous) 요소의 구성 비율에 따라 관형(융모형 비율 25% 미만), 관융모형(융모형 비율 25%에서 75% 사이), 융모형(융모형 비율 75% 초과)의 3가지 샘종으로 나눌 수 있다[5]. 정의에 따르면, 모든 전형적 샘종은 상피의 이형성(dysplasia)을 나타내고, 이러한 이형성은 저등급(low-grade) 또는 고등급(high-grade)으로 평가될 수 있다[5]. 고등급이형성은 복잡한 샘구조 이상(intraluminal cribriforming or necrosis, back-to-back fusion of multiple glands), 핵의 다형성, 핵 대 세포질 비율의 증가 등을 특징으로 한다(Fig 4A). 저등급 이형성의 특징으로는 비복잡성 구조, 축화(stratification), 길어진 모양의 과염성 핵, 유지된 세포 극성 등이 있다(Fig 4B). 고등급이형성과 저등급이형성의 감별을 위해 가장 중요하고 필수적인 부분은 고유층의 침범이 없는 복잡한 샘구조 이상으로, 복잡한 구조 이상 없이 세포학적 이상만 있을 경우는 고등급이형성으로 진단하지 않는다. 이전 판에서는 세포학적 이상이 있을 경우에도 고등급이형성이 진단하도록 권고하였고, 세 개 이상의 선구조가 고등급 소견을 보일 경우를 고등급이형성의 진단 기준으로 하였다. 이를 따르면 세포학적 이상만으로 고등급이형성을 진단하는 경우가 많아지고, 고등급이형성의 진단에 가장 중요한 복잡한 샘구조 이상이 있음에도 불구하고 저등급이형성으로 진단하는 경우가 있었기 때문에, 복잡한 샘구조 이상을 고등급이형성의 필수 요소로 기술하였다. 하나의 전형적 샘종에서 고등급과 저등급 이형성이 함께 존재할 때에는 고등급이형성으로 진단한다[1].

WHO 분류에 따르면 톱니모양병변은 과증식 용종(hyperplastic polyp), 무경성톱니모양병변(sessile serrated lesion, SSL, 기존 용어 sessile serrated adenoma/polyp), 전통[top니모양샘종(traditional serrated adenoma)의 3가지로 나눌 수 있다[5]. 그러나 톱니모양병변의 분류법 및 진단기준은 계속 변하여 왔다[35,36]. 가장 최근의 2019년 WHO 분류법[5], 2012년 미국 전문가 패널 권고사항[35] 및 2015년 영국의 가이드라인[36]을 종합적으로 고찰한 결과, 우리는 대장암의 기 존재 샘종(pre-existing adenoma)로서 톱니모양병변을 다음 3가지 용어 중 하나로 진단할 것을 권고한다: (1) 이형성이 없는 무경성톱니모양병변(SSL), (2) 이형성이 있는 무경성톱니모양병변(SSL with dysplasia, SSLD), (3) 전통톱니모양샘종. 과증식 용종은 비전암성 양성 병변으로 취급되며 대장암의 기 존재 샘종로서의 톱니모양병변 범주에서는 포함하지 않도록 한다.

모든 무경성톱니모양병변은 전암성 병변으로 취급되며, 형태학적 이형성이 있을 수도 있고 없을 수도 있다. 이형성이 없는 무경성톱니모양병변과 비교하여 이형성이 있는 무경성톱니모양병변은 양성으로 진행할 위험도가 높은 것으로 알려져 있다. 무경성톱니모양병변은 기저부까지 관찰되는 용(crypt) 내강의 톱니바퀴 모양(serration), 용의 수평방향 성장, 비대칭적 종식과 용의 바닥부분이 늘어나거나 가지치는 양상을 특징으로 한다(Fig. 4C). 무경성톱니모양병변은 전형적인 구조 이상을 보이는 용이 하나만 존재해도 진단할 수 있다[5,35]. 무경성톱니모양병변의 이형성은 다양한 형태로 나타날 수 있으며, 하나의 병변에서 여러가지 이상의 형태를 보이기도 한다. 구조적으로 융모형 변화, 음 길이의 연장, 음 밀도의 증가, 격자형성, 음 내 톱니의 감소 등을 보일 수 있고, 세포학적으로 융모형 샘종과 유사한 핵을 보이거나(성장 이형성: intestinal dysplasia) 원형의 핵소체가 두단한 핵을 보일 수 있다(톱니모양병변: serrated dysplasia)[5]. 무경성톱니모양병변의 이형성에서는 MLH1의 발현 소실이 관찰되는 경우가 있기 때문에, MLH1 면역염색이 무경성톱니모양병변의 이형성을 진단하는 데 도움이 될 수도 있다[37]. 무경성톱니모양병변의 이형성을 등급화하는 체계는 아직 제시된 바가 없다. 따라서 우리는 대장암의 기 존재 샘종으로서의 무경성톱니모양병변을 기술할 때에는 이형성의 여부만 명시할 것 것으로 권고한다.
모든 전통톱니모양샘종은 전암성 이형성 병변으로 취급되지만, 전통톱니모양샘종의 이형성을 분류하거나 등급화하는 체계는 아직 제시된 바가 없다. 따라서 우리는 대장암의 term 전문에 있어서 전통톱니모양샘종을 진단할 때 따로 이형성에 대한 언급 없이 전통톱니모양샘종만을 기술하면 될 것으로 권고한다. 전통톱니모양샘종은 평평하다가 예리하게 파인 형태의 내강 톱니바퀴 모양 및 풍부한 호산성 세포질을 가진 기가 큰 원주세포, 가능하며 색, 이소성 영 형성 등을 특징으로 한다(Fig. 4D). 전통톱니모양샘종은 종종 다른 톱니모양병변이나 전형적 샘종을 동반한 혼합형 병변의 형태로 나타날 수 있다[38]. 전형적 샘종 및 톱니모양병변을 모두 포함하여 두 가지 이상의 조직학적 아형의 조합으로 이루어진 전암성 병변일 경우에는 혼합형 샘종(mixed adenoma)이라는 용어를 사용할 수 있다.

Associated findings

- Absent
- Tumor perforation (pT4a)
- Perforation (non-tumor perforation)
- Metastasis to one site or organ without peritoneal metastasis (pM1a)
- Metastasis to two or more sites or organs without peritoneal metastasis (pM1b)
- Metastasis to the peritoneal surface with or without other site or organ metastasis (pM1c)

Specify metastatic sites or organs: _____________________________________________

해설: 종양에 의한 천공은 대장암에서 나쁜 예후와 관련이 있는 것으로 알려져 있다[39]. 종양이 침범하지 않은 부위의 천공도 복막염이나 패혈증을 유발할 수 있어 나쁜 예후와 관련이 있는 것으로 알려져 있으며, 주로 내강을 막는 종양의 근위부에서 발생한다. 원격전이는 AJCC 8판에 따라, 복막 전이가 없으면서 한 위치 또는 한 장기로 전이하였을 경우 pM1a, 복막전이가 없으면서 두 이상의 위치 또는 두 이상의 장기로 전이하였을 경우 pM1b로 분류하고, 복막전이가 있을 경우에는 pM1c로 분류한다[4].

Separate lesions

- Absent
- Adenoma
- Polyps
- GIST
- Ulcerative colitis/Crohn's disease
- Others

Specify: _____________________________________________
## 절제 대장의 선택 기재사항

### Tumor budding

- [x] Not identified
- [ ] Present
  - [ ] ≤ 4 buds (low)
  - [ ] 5–9 buds (intermediate)
  - [ ] ≥ 10 buds (high)
- [ ] Cannot be assessed (specify: ______________________________)

해설: 종양 발아는 대장 및 직장암에서 잘 알려진 독립적인 나쁜 예후 인자이다[40]. 종양발아는 다음과 같은 이유로 대장 및 직장암환자의 진료에 도움이 될 수 있다: (1) 내시경적으로 절제된 절막 절제술 점막에서 절막하 침윤(pT1)을 보이는 대장 및 직장암의 경우, 종양발아는 림프절 전이의 위험을 높일 수 있는 나쁜 예후인자이다[26,41,42]. 따라서 종양 발아를 보이는 환자는 잠재적인 수술적 후보자로 볼 수 있다. (2) 높은 등급의 종양 발아를 보이는 병기 II(pT3N0 and pT4N0) 대장 및 직장 암 환자는 그렇지 않은 환자 군과 비교하여 더 나쁜 재발율을 보인다. 그러므로 높은 등급의 종양발아는 수술 후 보조요법이 필요한 환자군 선별에 유용할 수 있다[43]. (3) 수술 전 생검 검체에서 종양발아의 존재는 전후조치(수술전 항암치료)에 대한 높은 위험성(저항성)을 보일 수 있는 직장암 환자군 선별에도 도움이 될 수 있다[44,45]. 그러므로, 절막질제술 pT1 대장직장암 환자 및 병기 II의 대장직장암 환자의 경우, 종양발아에 관한 항목을 병리 진단지에 기재하는 것을 권장한다.

2016년에 열린 International Tumor Budding Consensus Conference (ITBCC)에서 다음과 같은 종양 발아의 평가기준을 제시하였다[46]. (1) 종양발아는 1개 혹은 4개 이상의 암세포군들로 정의한다. (2) 종양발아는 모든 슬라이드를 검토한 후 침윤성 성장을 보이는 종양의 침습면 중 종양발아가 가장 잘 관찰되는 부위에서 측정하는 것을 권장한다(0.785 mm²의 필드이거나, 대안 렌즈 FN 지름이 20 mm인 ×200 배 시야). (3) 종양발아는 H&E 슬라이드에서 평가가 가능하다. Cytokeratin 면역염색은 H&E 슬라이드에서 종양주변에 침윤성 간질 세포와 구분이 힘든 경우 도움이 될 수 있고, 더 나은 재현 성과 판찰지간의 동일을 높일 수 있지만[47], 세포 자멸체 및 세포파편에도 염색되어 종양발아로 오인될 수 있다[46,48]. 따라서 위에 기재한 종양 발아에 대한 3가지 등급체계를 추천한다. 하지만, 종양 발아의 등급체계는 절대적인 기준이 아니며, 종양발아의 개수가 측정.기재하는 것이 정보수집 등의 위험을 피할 수 있다. 도문 조직학적 유형을 보이는 경우(점액성 암종, 인환세포암종, 미세유두샘암종, 그리고 수질암종) 종양 발아의 평가는 주의를 요한다[46]. 그러므로 종양 발아를 정확하게 평가할 수 없는 경우 ‘cannot be assessed’라고 기재하며 그 이유를 제시한다.

### Tumor border configuration


---

### Completeness of total mesorectal excision

- [ ] Complete
- [ ] Nearly complete
- [ ] Incomplete
- [ ] Cannot be determined
해설: 전직장간막절제술(total mesorectal excision)이란 직장암을 제거할 때 직장간막의 바깥쪽 면인 느슨한 섬유성 결합조직 내에서 림프절을 포함한 직장이 감싸고 있는 연부조직 및 복부경계면을 모두 제거하는 것이다.[50] 전직장간막절제술을 시행하여 종양이 침투한 가장자리 부위까지 적절히 절제하면 염증소견이 보이지 않게 되며 국소 재발률이 감소한다는 것이 다수의 비무작위연구를 통해 밝혀진 바 있다. 유안검색 시 장막으로 덮여 있지 않은 측면에 대해 직장간막이 완벽히 절제되었는지를 최소한 2개의 대표적 절편을 포매하여 평가하고 필요하다고 보고한다[3,4,7]. 전직장간막절제술을 시행하여 조직구축학적 평가를 통해 질병성 소견이 없는 것으로 0.5 cm 이하의 절편을 충분히 포매해 보고한다[3,4,7]. 등급 부여의 기준은 아래와 같다.

**Complete:** 직장간막이 완전히 제거되어 원추형모양이 없는 매끈한 원통형 절제면의 불규칙함이 거의 없음.[결손이 있더라도 결손의 깊이 0.5 cm 이하]

**Nearly complete:** 직장간막 절단면이 불규칙함. 결손이 고유근층까지 확장되지 않음(결손분분의 깊이 0.5 cm 초과). 직장고유근층이 노출되어 있지 않음(원위부 끝 올림근 부착 부위 제외).

**Incomplete:** 직장간막에 심각한 결손 있음. 직장 고유근층이 노출됨.

---

Preoperative chemoradiotherapy

- □ Yes
- □ No
- □ Not known

**If yes** Tumor regression grade

- □ Grade 0: No viable cancer cells (complete response)
- □ Grade 1: Single cells or rare small groups of cancer cells (near-complete response)
- □ Grade 2: Residual cancer with evident tumor regression, but more than single cells or rare small groups of cancer cells (partial response)
- □ Grade 3: Extensive residual cancer with no evident tumor regression (poor or no response)

---

해설: 직장암의 치료 원칙은 근치적 절제 수술로 잔존하는 종양이 없는 상태를 이루는 것으로 국소 진행된 직장암은 골반 내 재발의 감소를 위한 보조 치료로 수술 전 항암화학방사선치료(chemoradiotherapy) 후 전직장간막절제술이 치료의 원칙이다.[51,52] 수술 전 항암화학방사선치료의 종양반응등급(tumor regression grade)은 환자의 예후 및 재발 감소에 중요한 요인이다.[53-55]. 종양반응등급은 각 나라 및 기관마다 서로 다른 분류 및 등급체계를 사용하고 있으며, 이와 관련된 여러 연구 논문들 역시 제작 기준이 대조적인 등급 체계를 적용하고 있어 임상 및 병리의사들간에 혼란을 주고 있다.[4,53-59]. AJCC/CAP 종양반응등급 분류체계는 현재 National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) 가이드라인에서도 사용되고 있는 가장 많이 사용되고 있는 분류체제로서 종양종양반응등급 판정 시 림프절내 존재하고 있는 종양은 종양반응등급 판정에서 고려하지 않고 있다.[4]. 대한병리학회 소화기병리학 연구회에서는 2006년 "대장암 병리보고서 기준사항 표준화"에서 제안한 바에 따라 치료 효과를 등급화 된 숫자로 기술하지 않고, 퇴행 정도를 서술하는 것을 권장하였다[1]. 그러나, 서술적 판단기준 역시 병리의사 간 차이가 존재하고 있고, 이러한 서술적 분류체계가 널리 사용되고 있지 않아 기존의 숫자화 된 등급체계와 혼란을 주고 있다. 이를 극복하고자 소화기병리학 연구회에서는 널리 통용될 수 있는 새로운 종양반응등급을 8판 AJCC 및 CAP cancer protocol을 기반으로 분류하였다.(Fig. 5)[3,4].

종양의 종양반응 등급판정을 위하여 육안적으로 종양이 보이며 주변 연부조직까지 침범한 경우 최소한 4개 이상의 대표적 절편을 포매하여야 한다. 섬유화가 진행되어 있어 주변지방조직 침범이 확실히 보이지 않거나, 정상 정막 아래에서 섬유화가 있는 절편 및 2.0 cm 이하의 범위는 상, 하방으로 0.4 cm 간격으로 절제 후 법정 절편을 포매하는 조리구축학적 절편을 권장한다. 수술 전 항암화학방사선치료 후 적출된 절체의 특징은 종양세포가 많은 양의 섬유화로 침범되며, 포말탐식세포를 포함하여 많은 양의 염증세포가 침범되어 있다. 또한 부종, 접착변성, 피사 등을 볼 수 있고 종양세포가 없는 점액 웅덩이(acellular mucin) 등을 관찰할 수 있다. 종양세포 없이 접착소 혹은 피사조직만 관찰될 경우 병리학적으로는 완전 퇴행 반응(complete regression)으로 판정할 수 있다. 종양세포와 거대세포 및 섬유모세포와의 강별이 어려울 경우, 계단식 절편을 시행하거나, 점액염색 혹은 cytokeratin과 같은 면역조직화학염색 등을 시행함으로써 종양반응등급 분류 판정에 도움을 받을 수 있다.
EGFR immunohistochemistry
해설: 그 동안의 연구들에 따르면 대장암의 25%~90%에서 epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) 단백질의 발현이 면역조직화학염색에서 관찰되었다[60-64]. 초기에 발표된 연구들에서는 대장암에서 면역조직화학염색을 통한 EGFR 발현 증가가 cetuximab이나 panitumumab과 같은 EGFR 표적 치료제에 의한 치료에 대한 의료적 이익이 있을 것으로 생각하였다[65]. 하지만, 후속 연구들에서 EGFR 면역조직화학염색 발현 정도와 이들 약물에 대한 치료반응 사이에 상관 관계가 없음을 밝혀졌다[66-68]. 따라서, 현재 면역조직화학염색에 의한 EGFR 발현은 EGFR 표적 치료제 반응의 예측인자로 간주되지 않으며, EGFR 표적 치료제에 대한 이러한 연구들에서는 EGFR 발현을 치료 적용 기준에 포함시키지 않고 있다[69]. 국내에서는 대장암 환자에서 EGFR 표적 치료제를 사용하기 위해서는 EGFR 발현이 확인된 경우에만, 현재 면역조직화학염색에 의한 EGFR 발현은 EGFR 표적 치료제의 치료효과를 정확하게 예측하는지에 대해서는 근거가 없다.

DNA mismatch repair immunohistochemistry
MLH1: □ Positive (Retained expression)
□ Negative (Loss of expression)
MSH2: □ Positive (Retained expression)
□ Negative (Loss of expression)
PMS2: □ Positive (Retained expression)
□ Negative (Loss of expression)
MSH6: □ Positive (Retained expression)
□ Negative (Loss of expression)
Summary: DNA mismatch repair deficiency (was/was not) observed
해설: 대장암 조직에서 DNA mismatch repair (MMR) 단백질에 대한 면역조직화학염색은 4가지 MMR 유전자들 (MLH1, MSH2, MSH6 및 PMS2) 중 하나에서의 배선 돌연변이 (germline mutation) 또는 프로모터 과메틸화 (promoter CpG island hypermethylation)에 의해 발생하는 MMR 결핍 (MMR deficiency)을 판정하기 위한 매우 간단하고 유용한 방법이다[69-71]. MMR 결핍은 DNA 현미부수체 (microsatellite) 반복 서열이 유전체 전반적으로 길이 변화를 보이는 것을 특징으로 하는 현미부수체 불안정성 (high level of microsatellite instability, MSI-H)의 고유한 원인이다[72]. MLH1는 PMS2와 이합체 (dimer)를 이루며 DNA MMR 기능을 수행하므로, 대장암에서 MLH1 유전자의 돌연변이 또는 프로모터 메틸화가 발생하게 되면 MLH1 및 PMS2의 면역조직학적 학발현은 모두 음성 소견을 보인다[69,70]. 마찬가지로, MSH2는 MSH6과 이합체를 이루기 때문에, MSH2의 돌연변이가 있는 대장암은 MSH2 및 MSH6 면역조직학적 검사에서 모두 음성을 나타낸다[69,70]. 그러나 대장암에서 PMS2 또는 MSH6 유전자의 돌연변이가 발생하면, MLH1 및 MSH2의 발현은 유지되고 PMS2 또는 MSH6의 발현만이 소실된다[69,70].
MMR 양성을 면역조직화학염색을 이용하여 판정하기 위해서는 핵에 염색된 양상을 나타낸다. MMR 단백질 중 적어도 하나가 종양세포의 핵에서 발현 소실이 되어 있다면 MMR 결핍으로 판정할 수 있다(Fig. 6).

MMR 면역조직학염색은 현재 대장암에서 치료증후군 또는 산발성 MSI-H 대장암의 선별검사를 위한 조직병리학적 도구로 확립되어 있다[69-71]. MMR 결핍 (또는 MSI-H)가 대장암에서 좋은 예후와 의의한 관련이 있는 한편, 5-fluorouracil (5-FU)를 기반으로 하는 보조적 항암화학요법에 대한 지향성과 관련성이 있음에 따라 분석 결과를 포함한 이전의 많은 데이터를 이용하여 입증되었다[72-74]. 또한 최근의 연구들에 따르면 MMR 결핍 (또는 MSI-H)가 대장암을 포함한 여러 고형암에서 PD-1 차단을 사용한 항암면역치료의 중요한 치료반응 예측 인자임이 입증되고 있다[75,76]. 따라서 면역조직학염색을 통한 MMR 평가 혹은 DNA 분석을 이용한 MSI 평가는 외과적으로 치료된 모든 대장암 표본에 대하여 병리 보고서를 통하여 그 결과를 개선적으로 보고하는 것이 필요하다.
Immunoscore

해설: 종양침윤림프구(tumor-infiltrating lymphocyte, TIL)가 대장암 환자의 예후와 밀접한 관련이 있다는 사실이 다수의 연구들에 의하여 입증되어 왔다[77, 78]. 구체적으로는 대장암에서 TIL의 수치가 높을수록 대장암 환자의 예후가 좋다는 것이 입증되었다[77, 78]. 대장암에서 예후와 관련된 TIL의 구성은 세포독성 T 림프구가 주를 이루고 있으며 따라서 CD3 및 CD8 면역조직화합염색을 시행하는 것이 TIL 측정의 근간을 이루고 있다[78, 80].

이들 연구결과에 근거하여 'Immunoscore'라는 표준화된 분류체계를 도입하려는 시도가 이루어지고 있으며 2012년에 Jerome Galon 박사가 주도하는 다국적 연구자들의 태스크포스 컨소시엄이 이루어져 immunoscore와 관련된 컨센서스를 이루기 위한 사업이 추진되고 있다(http://www.immunoscore.org)[80, 81]. 

대장암에서 immunoscore를 판정하기 위한 단계는 다음과 같다: (1) 대표 종양 절편을 선택, (2) 선택된 종양 절편에 대하여 CD3 및 CD8 면역염색을 시행, (3) 종양침윤경계부(invasive margin, IM) 및 종양중심부(tumor center, TC) 두 영역에 대하여 각각의 CD3 양성 세포 및 CD8 양성 세포의 밀도를 구함, (4) 이로써 산출되는 4가지 변수(CD3+ IM, CD3+ TC, CD8+ IM, and CD8+ TC) 각각에 대하여 high 혹은 low로 분류하는 이분 주화를 시행, (5) 4가지 변수의 결과를 종합하여 최종 immunoscore를 산출(예: 'high'가 하나도 없으면 I0, 'high'가 하나만 있으면 I1, 'high'가 둘 있으면 I2, 'high'가 셋 있으면 I3, 넷 모두 'high'이면 I4).

비록 immunoscore가 대장암에서 예후적 유의성을 지닌다는 강력한 증거들이 존재하지만, immunoscore의 적응증, 평가법 및 분류법의 측면에 있어서 전세계적으로 잘 합의된 컨센서스를 이루지는 못하고 있다[80, 81]. 현행 immunoscore의 가장 중요한 제한점 중 하나는 CD3 혹은 CD8 양성 세포의 밀도를 high 및 low로 두 단계로 판정함으로써 단계적적 분석을 어렵게 만드는 것이나는 문제이다. 디지털 이미지를 통한 자동화된 형태계측방법(automated analysis)이 향후 표준화된 평가기준을 마련하는데 도움이 될 수 있을 것이다. 결론적으로 대장암에서 immunoscore의 평가 및 보고는 임상적인 필요성 및 기관의 수행능력 등에 기반하여 권장될 수는 있으나 현재 병리보고서의 필수 기재사항에는 포함하지 않았다.

Microsatellite instability (MSI)

Summary: □ MSI-stable (MSS) □ MSI-low (MSI-L) □ MSI-high (MSI-H)

해설: 현미부수체불안정은 불일치복구 유전자(mismatch repair gene; MLH1, MSH2, MSH6, PMS2)의 태생적 돌연변이(germline mutation) 또는 MLH1 유전자 프로모터의 과메틸화에 의한 MMR 결핍(MMR deficiency)으로 염기서열 내 현미부수체의 길이가 변하는 현상이다[72]. NCCN 가이드라인과 미국 대장암 바이오마커 가이드라인에서는 현미부수체불안정은 린치증후군의 선별을 위하여 모든 대장암에서 시행하는 것을 권장한다[82]. 또한, 대장암에서 현미부수체불안정은 좋은 예후와 연관되며, 5-FU 기반의 보조항암화학요법에 대한 지향성과 연관된다[83, 84]. 최근의 연구에서 현미부수체불안정은 PD1 억제제를 이용한 종양면역치료의 치료반응 예측인자로 입증되었다[75, 85]. 현미부수체불안정은 측정하는 표준점검법(gold standard)은 모세관전기이동(capillary electrophoresis)를 이용하여 정상조직 대비 종양조직에서의 핵산증폭산물의 길이변화를 비교하는 방법이다. 두 개의 모노뉴클레오타이드 마커(BAT25, BAT26), 세 개의 다이뉴클레오타이드 마커(DSS346, D2S123, D17S250)를 검사하는 베데스다 패널(Bethesda panel)과, 다섯 개의 모노뉴클레오타이드 마커(NR-27, NR-21, NR-24, BAT-25, BAT-26)를 검사하는 준단일체(quasimonomorphic) 모노뉴클레오타이드 마커패널을 사용할 수 있다[86, 87]. 준단일체 모노뉴클레오타이드 마커패널의 경우 실시간 중합효소연쇄반응(real-time PCR) 기법으로도 검사가 가능하다. 현미부수체 고불안정(microsatellite instability-high, MSI-high, MSI-H)을 보이는 경우 불일치복구 단백질에 대한 면역조직화합염색을 추가적으로 시행하여 린치증후군을 선별해야 한다. MLH1의 발현이 소실된 MSI-H 대장암에서 BRAF V600E 돌연변이가 양성인 경우 린치증후군을 배제할 수 있다[88]. 현미부수체불안정은 불일치복구결핍(mismatch repair deficiency, dMMR)과 상응하므로 모세관전기이동 검사를 사용할 수 없는 경우 불일치복구 단백질
인 MLH1, MSH2, MSH6, PMS2에 대한 면역조직화학검사법으로 갈음할 수 있다.

베데스다 패널은 다섯 개의 현미부수체 마커 중 2개 이상의 마커가 불안정을 보이는 경우 ‘MSI-H’라고 보고하며, 현미부수체 마커 중 한 개의 마커가 불안정을 보이는 경우 ‘현미부수체 저불안정형(microsatellite instability-low, MSI-low, MSI-L)’이라고 보고한다. 현미부수체 마커 중 단 하나에서도 불안정이 관찰되지 않는 경우 ‘현미부수체안정형(microsatellite stable, MSS)’라고 보고한다[87]. Quasimonomorphic mononucleotide marker의 경우 MSI-H의 기준을 마커 3개 이상이 불안정을 보일 때 필요하다는 지침[87]에 따라, 마커 2개 이상이 불안정을 보일 때 필요하다는 지침에 대하여 아직 이견이 있다[89,90].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>KRAS mutation analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ No mutation detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Mutation detected (specify: example: c.35G&gt;A, p.Gly12Asp)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>NRAS mutation analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ No mutation detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Mutation detected (specify: example: c.35G&gt;A, p.Gly12Asp)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

해설. KRAS 유전자와 NRAS 유전자 각각의 exon 2, 3, 4에 대하여 돌연변이의 유무를 검사하는 것을 확장형 RAS 돌연변이 검사라고 한다[82,91]. 전이성 대장암 환자에서 표피성장인자수용체 차단제(EGFR blocker)의 단일요법/병용요법은 환자의 생존기간을 유의하게 증가시킨다고 알려져 있으나, KRAS 유전자의 exon 2, 3, 4와 NRAS 유전자의 exon 2, 3, 4에 점 돌연변이가 존재할 경우 표피성장인자수용체 차단제에 저항성을 띄는 것으로 알려져 있다. 따라서 전이성 대장암 환자에서 표피성장인자 수용체 차단제를 사용하려는 경우 반드시 KRAS exon 2, 3, 4와 NRAS exon 2, 3, 4를 모두 포함하는 확장형 RAS 돌연변이검사(extended RAS mutation test)를 시행할 것을 유럽종양학회(European Society for Medical Oncology, ESMO) 가이드라인, NCCN 가이드라인, 미국 대장암 바이오마커 가이드라인 등에서 권장하고 있다[82,91-93]. 한편, KRAS 유전자의 exon 2의 점 돌연변이가 대장암의 불량한 예후와 연관된 것으로 알려져 있다[94-98].

확장형 RAS돌연변이검사는 생어시퀀싱(Sanger sequencing), 파이로시퀀싱(pyrosequencing), 실시간 중합효소연쇄반응(real-time PCR) 등이 사용될 수 있으며, 차세대시퀀싱 고형암 패널을 이용하여 검사가 가능하게 되었다. KRAS, NRAS 유전자의 exon 2, 3, 4에 대하여 점 돌연변이의 유무와 검출된 점 돌연변이의 종류를 보고하여야 하며, 유전자 명명법은 공인된 명명법을 사용해야 한다.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BRAF mutation analysis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□ No mutation detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ BRAF V600E (c.1799T&gt;A) mutation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>□ Other BRAF mutation (specify: ______________________________)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

해설. BRAF V600E 돌연변이는 MLH1 프로모터의 과메틸화를 보이는 현미부수체 불안정 대장암 환자의 3분의 2가량에서 발견되는 것으로 보고되고 있으나, 린치증후군 환자에서는 BRAF V600E 돌연변이가 관찰되지 않는다[99]. 따라서 현미부수체 불안정 대장암 환자에서 BRAF V600E 돌연변이 검사가 양성인 경우 린치증후군을 배제할 수 있으므로 불일치복구 유전자에 대한 유전자 검사를 시행하지 않아야 한다[88].

현미부수체 불안정과 BRAF V600E 돌연변이를 동시에 가진 환자군(MSI/BRAF-MT)은 매우 양호한 예후를 보이는 것으로 보고되었고, 현미부수체 불안정 응성 대장암에서 BRAF V600E 돌연변이를 보이는 환자군(MSS/BRAF-MT)만 불량한 예후를

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BRAF V600E (c.1799T&gt;A) mutation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No mutation detected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF V600E (c.1799T&gt;A) mutation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other BRAF mutation (specify: ______________________________)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Other BRAF mutation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specify: ______________________________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
보이는 것으로 보고되었다[95-98]. 따라서 대장암 환자의 예후 예측을 위해서 BRAF 돌연변이 검사는 현미부수체불안정검사와 함께 사용되어야 한다. 진이성 대장암에서 행해진 두 연구에서 BRAF V600E 돌연변이는 불량한 예후와 연관되었다[98,100].

표피성장인자수용체 차단제 치료에 있어 BRAF V600E 돌연변이가 불량한 치료 반응과 연관되다는 보고가 있으나, BRAF V600E 돌연변이가 독립적인 예측인자인가에 대해서는 논란이 계속되고 있다[101,102]. 2017년 NCCN guideline에서는 표피 성장인자수용체 차단제의 적용중이 되는 진이성 대장암 환자에서 BRAF V600E 돌연변이 검사를 권고하고 있으나, ASCP guideline과 ESMO guideline에는 권고하지 않고 있는 실정이다[82,91].

생어시퀀싱(Sanger sequencing), 파이로시퀀싱(pyrosequencing), 실시간 중합효소연쇄반응(real-time PCR) 등이 사용될 수 있으며, 차세대시퀀싱 고형암 패널을 이용하여 검사가 가능하게 되었다. BRAF exon 15 V600E 돌연변이의 존재 유무를 보고하야 하며, 유전자 명명법은 공인된 명명법을 사용해야 한다.

대한병리학회 소화기병리학연구회 대장암 기재사항 표준화 소위원회
위원: 김백희, 김준미, 강경훈, 장희진, 강동욱, 김정호, 배정모, 서안나, 박호성, 강윤경, 이경화, 조미연, 도인구, 이혜승, 장희경, 박도윤, 강효정, 손진희, 장미수, 정은선, 한혜승, 김윤화.
책임저자: 김준미 (인하대학교 병원)

REFERENCES

68. Ogino S, Meyerhardt JA, Cantor M, et al. Molecular alterations in tumors and response to combination chemotherapy with gefitinib for ad-
Fig. 1. Histologic features of intramucosal carcinoma. (A) The intramucosal carcinoma shows irregular invasive glands accompanied by desmoplasia. (B) The glands show excessive budding and luminal serration, which is highly suspicious for disruption of the basement membrane. (C) The elongated nuclei are seen in low-grade dysplasia, regardless of the ratio to the cell length.
Fig. 2. Measuring depth of invasion in tumors with submucosal invasion. (A) Haggitt level of invasion is composed of head, neck, stalk, and beyond stalk in pedunculated tumors. (B) The depth of invasion should be measured from the neck of the polyp (Haggitt level 2). (C) In cases with disrupted muscularis mucosae, the depth of submucosa invasion is measured from a continuous line of the residual muscularis mucosae. (D) To highlight indistinct muscularis mucosae, immunohistochemistry for desmin may be performed.
Fig. 3. Histologic features of lymphatic invasion and venous invasion. (A) Tumor clusters with retraction artifacts can be misinterpreted as lymphatic invasion (H&E stain and D2-40 immunohistochemical stain). (B) Tumor invasion of small vessels is considered as lymphatic invasion (H&E stain and D2-40 immunohistochemical stain). (C) Tumors involving vessels with identifiable smooth muscle layer or elastic lamina are considered as venous invasion.
Fig. 4. Histologic features of premalignant lesions of the colorectum. (A) Tubular adenoma with high-grade dysplasia. Note the architectural complexity including cribriform pattern or back-to-back fusion of dysplastic glands. (B) Tubulovillous adenoma with low-grade dysplasia. Note the retained cellular polarity with pseudostratified, elongated nuclei. (C) Sessile serrated adenoma without dysplasia. Note the dilated base of crypts. (D) Traditional serrated adenoma. Note the deep-invaginated pattern of crypt serration with hypereosinophilic cytoplasm and pencillated nuclei.
Fig. 5. Recommended tumor regression grading system. 
(A) Grade 0, complete response. No residual tumor cells are identified. 
(B) Grade 1, near complete response. The tumor bed contained abundant fibrosis with only a few or scattered tumor cells. 
(C) Grade 2, partial response. Residual tumor glands are easily identified in tumor bed. 
(D) Grade 3, poor or no response. The tumor cells do not demonstrate any response to chemoradiotherapy because abundant residual adenocarcinoma is present.
Fig. 6. A representative case of colorectal cancer with MMR deficiency (MLH1 deficiency). (A) MLH1 immunohistochemical staining showed negativity of nuclear expression in tumor cells. Note the retained nuclear expression in adjacent inflammatory cells. (B) MSH2 immunohistochemical staining demonstrated positivity of nuclear expression in tumor cells.
Recent studies have reported the promising results of immunotherapy in many solid tumors [1]. Unlike traditional cancer therapy, which targets the tumor directly, immunotherapy offers a different approach and is an alternative treatment option for patients with cancer. Because immunotherapy generally engages immune reactions to recognize and eliminate tumor cells, demand for understanding the tumor immune response has increased. Resulting from increased study, novel biomarkers associated with the tumor immune reaction have emerged. These biomarkers may allow innovative approaches in patient selection for immunotherapy and lead to advanced treatment response, expanding the potential impact of immunotherapy. After the advent of U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-approved anti–programmed cell death-1 (PD-1)/programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1) therapy agents, the importance of immunotherapy in gastric cancer (GC) has continuously increased. In this review article, we recapitulate the general concept of immuno-oncology and discuss its clinical application while focusing on historical and current clinical trials.

TUMOR IMMUNE MICROENVIRONMENT: GENERAL CONCEPTS AND PROGNOSTIC SIGNIFICANCE

Tumor immune response

While the immune response to tumor cells is mainly caused by CD8-positive cytotoxic T cells, it is a multistep process (so-called cancer-immunity cycle) [2,3], including (1) tumor antigen production by tumor cells and processing of released tumor antigens by antigen presenting cells (APCs) such as dendritic cells (DCs), (2) tumor antigen presentation on the surface of T cells, and their co-inhibitory signals, such as the immune checkpoint molecules programmed death-1 and programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1). This paper also describes past clinical trials of immunotherapy for patients with GC and details their clinical implications. Strong predictive markers are essential to improve response to immunotherapy. Microsatellite instability, Epstein-Barr virus, PD-L1 expression, and tumor mutational burden are now regarded as potent predictive markers for immunotherapy in patients with GC. Novel immunotherapy and combination therapy targeting new immune checkpoint molecules such as lymphocyte-activation gene 3, T cell immunoglobulin, and mucin domain containing-3, and indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase have been suggested, and trials are ongoing to evaluate their safety and efficacy. Immunotherapy is an important treatment option for patients with GC and has great potential for improving patient outcome, and further research in immuno-oncology should be carried out.
APCs through major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I and MHC class II substances for recognition by T cells, (3) priming and activation of T cells in lymph nodes after recognition of tumor antigens, (4) migration of activated T cells to tumor through blood vessels, (5) infiltration of T cells into and around the tumor, (6) T cell recognition of antigen presenting tumor cells by binding between MHC class I substances on tumor cells and T cell receptors (TCRs) on the surface of T cells, and (7) killing of tumor cells recognized by T cells. The tumor cells destroyed by T cells release additional tumor antigens, increasing immune response. Some receptors and their ligands have been reported to promote or inhibit each step.

Because patients with tumors have enhanced immune reactions, many researchers have tried to identify tumor antigens that are expressed in tumor cells [4]. Proteins made from gene mutations can be recognized as tumor antigens. As normal cells become tumor cells, mutations are observed in various oncogenes and tumor suppressor genes (Fig. 1A). Furthermore, mutations can easily occur during the gene replication process of cell division due to the genetic instability of tumor cells [5]. Many proteins made from mutated genes are recognized as tumor antigens by immune cells regardless of their function. Neoantigens produced by genetic mutations can induce strong tumor immune responses [6]. Viral proteins from oncogenic viruses, such as human papillomaviruses and Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), are also tumor antigens. In patients infected with the virus, immune cells recognize proteins produced by the virus as antigens, resulting in an immune response to remove the virus-infected cells. Thus, proteins produced from viral genes in tumor cells are important tumor antigens [7]. In addition, proteins that are not expressed in normal cells can be overexpressed in tumor cells. These proteins could be recognized by the immune system as non-self [8]. Some glycoproteins and glycolipids expressed on the cellular surface are overexpressed or modified in tumor cells, which can be recognized as tumor antigens. Oncofetal antigens, such as carcinoembryonic antigen, can also cause immune responses with weak intensity and may be used as diagnostic markers.

Cell-mediated immunity is the main response to tumors, and the inhibitory effect of cytotoxic T cells on tumor cells is well known [9]. Cytotoxic T cells express CD8 and CD3, and have TCRs that recognize tumor antigens presented by MHC class I molecules [10]. T cell proliferation and activation in tumor tissues requires stimulation, usually by two stimuli (Fig. 1B). The first stimulus is a tumor antigen presented on MHC molecules.

**Fig. 1.** Cell-mediated tumor immunity. (A) Altered proteins are produced following genetic mutation of tumor cells or viral genes in tumor cells. Neoantigens can arise from these altered tumor proteins and be presented on tumor cell surface via major histocompatibility complex. Newly formed antigens on tumor cell surfaces are recognized by the immune system, and the tumor immune reaction is initiated. (B) T cell responses are generated by two signals. The first signal is binding between neoantigen presented on major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule and T cell receptor (TCR). The second signal is co-inhibitory or co-stimulatory and determines whether T cells will be activated or not. Programmed cell death protein-1 (PD-1), lymphocyte-activation gene 3, and T cell immunoglobulin, and mucin domain containing-3 are well known co-inhibitory receptors that bind specific ligands, such as programmed death-ligand 1 (PD-L1) or PD-L2. Binding between co-inhibitory receptors and their ligands induces T cell inactivation. Blockade of these co-inhibitory signals is the basic strategy for cancer immunotherapy.
As described above, neoantigens from genetically mutated or viral genes are major tumor antigens that cause tumor antigen-specific T cell responses. Second, co-stimulatory molecules affect T cell proliferation and survival. T cells have co-stimulatory receptors that combine with expressed co-stimulatory ligands on the surface of tumor cells to promote T cell activation. CD28 and CD27 expression is observed in T cells, and CD134 and CD137 are mainly expressed in antigen-activated T cells [11,12]. Helper T cells are positive for CD4 and CD3 expression. The role of helper T cells in tumor immunity has yet to be fully elucidated, but their main role is to aid humoral immunity via B cell antibody secretion and to enhance the function of cytotoxic T cells [13]. Helper T cells are reported to have cytokine functions in some tumors expressing MHC class II. Regulatory T cells (Tregs) express CD4, FOXP3, and CD25 and regulate the immune response by suppressing the immune response to self-proteins and the tumor immune response [14]. Tregs inhibit the tumor immune response by producing high-affinity interleukin-2 (IL-2) receptor, cytotoxic T lymphocyte–associated protein 4 (CTLA-4), IL-10, and immunosuppressive cytokines such as transforming growth factor β (TGF-β).

Mechanism of immune evasion in solid tumors

The immune surveillance system attempts to eliminate tumor cells in the early stages of cancer. However, tumor cells can inhibit the immune system or cause tumor cells themselves to avoid immune responses, a process called immunoeediting [15]. Tumor cells can adapt to avoid the immune response by various mechanisms. They can then reach an equilibrium state and escape from the tumor immune response [16].

In contrast to the co-stimulatory receptors described above, tumor cells produce several co-inhibitory receptors, including PD-1, CTLA-4, T cell immunoglobulin, and mucin domain containing-3 (TIM-3), lymphocyte-activation gene 3 (LAG-3), and indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO). These receptors inhibit T cell activation by binding to their tumor cell ligands [11,12]. Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) release interferon γ (IFN-γ) and induce expression of PD-L1 (also known as B7-H1 or CD274) in surrounding tumor cells, stromal cells, and blood cells [17]. Overexpressed PD-L1 activates and binds to PD-1 co-inhibitory receptors on CD8-positive T cells, rendering them inactive. In addition to PD-L1, PD-L2 (also known as B7-DC or CD273) also binds to PD-1 with a weaker binding strength than PD-L1. CTLA-4 is overexpressed early in CD4-positive and CD8-positive T cells. CTLA-4 binds to CD80 (B7-1) and CD86 (B7-2) on APCs, preventing them from binding to the co-stimulatory receptor CD28 and inhibiting TCRs by intracellular PP2A and SHP-2 signaling pathways [18]. CTLA-4 is continuously expressed in Tregs and supports the immunosuppressive function of Tregs [19]. LAG-3 expression is increased in activated T cells and natural killer cells, and its ligands are MHC class II, LSEctin, and galectin-3 [20,21]. LAG-3 inhibits T cell proliferation and cytokine production. TIM-3 binds to its ligands, including galectin-9, high mobility group box 1 (HMGB1), and carcinoembryonic antigen cell adhesion molecule 1, and plays a role in immune evasion of tumor cells by inactivating T cells [22].

MHC molecules are observed on the surface of all nucleated cells, and MHC class I molecules consist of a heavy chain (HLA-A, -B, and -C) and β-2-microglobulin (β2M) [23]. MHC class I molecules play a major role in the cell-mediated immunity caused by cytotoxic T cells. Expression of MHC class I molecules is heterogeneously observed in patients with cancer. Downregulation or loss of MHC class I molecule expression has been reported and is regarded as the main mechanism of avoiding immune responses [24]. β2M gene mutation and alterations in HLA gene transcription and translation are thought to be major causes of decreased MHC class I expression [25].

Tumor cells produce and secrete immunosuppressive factors that inhibit the function of immune cells, such as IL-10, galectins, tumor necrosis factor, TGF-β, prostaglandin E2, and vascular endothelial growth factor [26]. They not only inhibit the function of immune cells but also interfere with their differentiation and maturation. In addition, tumor cells can evade the immune response by modifying tumor antigens [26]. As a tumor grows, tumor cells with immunogenic tumor antigens are removed by the immune response. The immune response can no longer remove tumor cells that lack tumor antigens.

Prognostic significance of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in gastric cancer

In recent years, TILs have been studied for their role as prognostic markers and potential therapeutic targets. Neoantigens presented on cancer cells can recruit TILs and trigger an immune reaction. CD8-positive cytotoxic T cells play a role as the effector cytotoxic T cells involved in direct killing of tumor cells [5]. Therefore, they are regarded as the anti-tumorigenic T cell population. Many previous studies reported that higher TIL density was associated with favorable prognosis in patients with cancer, including GC. Furthermore, previous studies consistently demonstrated that higher TIL densities, such as CD3- or CD8-positive cytotoxic T cells, were associated with better outcome in patients with GC [27,28]. These studies investigated TIL density by immunohisto-
chemistry (IHC) of CD3, CD4, CD8, and other markers (Table 1) [29-42]. An image analyzing software was used to quantify TIL density and ensure constant analysis, or TIL density was counted manually. Most studies dichotomized TIL density into a low and high group for statistical analysis. However, the detailed methods and cut-offs are diverse and not yet standardized. For example, analysis areas were selected in various ways and cut-off values for TIL density had a diverse range. TILs were counted in one representative area, two to six representative areas, or in both the center and the invasive border. Some studies defined cutoffs as a median value, but others defined cutoffs as a mean, 25th percentile, or 60th percentile value calculated in their own cohort. Thus, the cutoff number for CD8-positive cytotoxic T cells ranged from 21.6/mm² to 946.22/mm². Although higher TIL density is repeatedly reported as a favorable prognostic biomarker, diagnostic methods are not standardized and there is no consensus regarding the cutoff for high TIL density. Therefore, further study and consensus are needed to clarify the diagnostic reliability and practical usefulness of TIL densities in patients with GC.

### CURRENT STATUS OF IMMUNOTHERAPY FOR GASTRIC CANCER

GC is the fourth most common cancer in the world and the

Table 1. Detailed methods of density of CD8-positive tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in the previous studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Subsets</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
<th>TMA</th>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Selected area</th>
<th>CD8 cutoff point</th>
<th>CD8 cutoff number (mm²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lee et al.</td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>CD3/CD8/CD45RO</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Consecutive GC</td>
<td>Representative one area</td>
<td>Mean</td>
<td>435.73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haas et al.</td>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>CD3/CD8/CD20/Fox3/Granzyme B/M</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Gastric cardia cancer</td>
<td>Six representative areas</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>21.6 (epithelial)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shen et al.</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>CD4/CD8/Fox3</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>GC with R0 resection</td>
<td>Average of two centers and two invasive border</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>946.22 (intratumoral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim et al.</td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>CD3/CD4/CD8/Fox3/Granzyme B</td>
<td>OS/ RFS</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Gastric cardia cancer</td>
<td>Mean of 5 HPFs (center areas)</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>744.40 (perifumoral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim et al.</td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>CD8/Fox3</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>MSI-H advanced GC</td>
<td>Average of 3 representative areas</td>
<td>60th percentile</td>
<td>601.5 (median, 542.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li et al.</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>192</td>
<td>CD4/CD8</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Advanced GC</td>
<td>Representative one slide</td>
<td>26%-100% staining</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liu et al.</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>CD3/CD4/CD8/Fox3/C57/M</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Surgical resection cases</td>
<td>Average of 5 noncontiguous and the densest random areas, in intratumoral and stromal area</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>839.69 (intratumoral)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hennequin et al.</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>CD8/CD20/Fox3/Tbet</td>
<td>RFS</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Consecutive GC (including preop-chemotherapy)</td>
<td>Mean of 3 HPF in core and invasive margin</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>523.90 (stromal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim et al.</td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>243</td>
<td>CD3/CD4/CD8</td>
<td>DFS</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Metastatic GC</td>
<td>Representative one core</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>375.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giampieri et al.</td>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>CD3</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Biopsy or resected specimens</td>
<td>More than 50%-60% stromal area covered by TILs</td>
<td>Not available</td>
<td>Not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kawazoe et al.</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>383</td>
<td>CD3/CD4/CD8/Fox3</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Advanced GC</td>
<td>Invasive area (two cores)</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Koh et al.</td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>392</td>
<td>CD3/CD4/CD8/Fox3</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Stage II and III GC</td>
<td>Tumor center and invasive border</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>25th percentile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parent et al.</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>CD3/CD8/Fox3/CD57</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Locally advanced or metastatic GC</td>
<td>Mean of 2 representative HPFs</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>130.07 (center)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kim et al.</td>
<td>Korea</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>CD3/CD8/Fox3</td>
<td>OS</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Early GC with submucosal invasion and advanced GC</td>
<td>Tumor center and invasive border</td>
<td>Median</td>
<td>101.76 (border)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

TMA, tissue microarray; OS, overall survival; GC, gastric cancer; DFS, disease-free survival; TIL, tumor-infiltrating lymphocyte.
second-leading cause of cancer-associated death [43]. For localized GC, the only curative treatment modality is radical surgery with or without perioperative chemotherapy [44]. For unresectable or metastatic GC, systemic chemotherapy has been the mainstay of palliation. Over the last decade, two new agents, monoclonal antibodies targeting human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2; trastuzumab) and vascular endothelial growth factor receptor 2 (VEGFR-2; ramucirumab), have been approved by the FDA to treat GC in the palliative setting [44]. Briefly, first-line therapy includes a combination of platinum and fluoropyrimidine (5-fluorouracil or capecitabine) with trastuzumab added in HER2-positive tumors [44]. In the second-line setting, therapeutic options include docetaxel, paclitaxel, or irinotecan monotherapy or ramucirumab alone or in combination with paclitaxel [44]. In fact, nearly all patients with advanced GC experience disease progression following treatment [45]. There is currently no standard third-line therapy but options include apatinib, a small molecule multitargeted tyrosine kinase inhibitor with activity against VEGFR-2, and regorafenib, a multi kinase inhibitor [44]. More recently, immune checkpoint inhibitors have emerged as among the most advanced therapeutic options available for patients with advanced GC [46].

Pembrolizumab is a selective, humanized, high-affinity IgG4 kappa monoclonal antibody that binds to PD-1, blocking its interaction with PD-L1 and 2 [45,47]. The FDA approved pembrolizumab in May 2017 for patients with unresectable or metastatic microsatellite instability-high (MSI-H) or mismatch repair deficient (dMMR) solid tumors that progressed even after prior treatment and who have no other optimal treatment choices [48]. The approval was based on promising results of five different clinical trials; the overall/ objective response rate (ORR), defined as proportion of patients with a complete or partial response, was 39.6% among 149 patients with various tumor types (95% confidence interval [CI], 31.7% to 47.9%). A complete response was seen in 7% of patients [48]. The duration of response ranged from 1.6+ to 22.7+ months (+ indicates no progressive disease at last patient assessment) [48]. The phase 1b KEYNOTE-012 trial had ORR of 22% among 36 patients with PD-L1 positive recurrent or metastatic gastric or gastroesophageal (G/GEJ) adenocarcinomas, and all responses were partial [49]. The phase 2 KEYNOTE-059 trial enrolled 259 patients with locally advanced or metastatic G/GEJ adenocarcinoma to further assess the safety and efficacy of pembrolizumab [50]. The ORR was 11.6% (95% CI, 8.0% to 16.1%), with complete response in 2.3% of cases (95% CI, 0.9% to 5.0%), and the response duration ranged from 1.6+ to 17.3+ months. Among 55% of the tumors with PD-L1 expression based on a combined positive score (CPS) ≥ 1 and that were either microsatellite stable or with undetermined microsatellite instability, the ORR was 13.3% (95% CI, 8.2 to 20.0), with complete response in 1.4% of cases. The duration of response was relatively long, ranging from 2.8+ to 19.4+ months. Based on these results, the FDA granted approval with acceleration for pembrolizumab to treat patients with recurrent, locally advanced or metastatic G/GEJ adenocarcinoma with disease progression on or after two or more standard systemic therapies and if tumors express PD-L1, as determined by an FDA-approved test (PD-L1 IHC 22C3 pharmDx test, Dako, Agilent, Santa Clara, CA, USA) [47]. In the phase 3 KEYNOTE-061 trial, pembrolizumab did not demonstrate significant improvement in overall survival (OS) compared to paclitaxel as second-line therapy for advanced G/GEJ cancer with PD-L1 CPS ≥ 1 [51]. However, pembrolizumab had a better safety profile than paclitaxel. The phase 3 KEYNOTE-062 trial enrolled 763 patients with PD-L1–positive, HER2-negative, advanced G/GEJ cancer; pembrolizumab used as a first-line therapy resulted in noninferior OS compared with standard chemotherapy [52]. Additionally, pembrolizumab showed significant improvement in OS among patients that had tumors with PD-L1 CPS ≥ 10.

Nivolumab, a human IgG4 monoclonal antibody that inhibits PD-1, has been approved for monotherapy and combination therapy in metastatic melanoma, non-small cell lung cancer, and renal cell carcinoma [46]. The phase 1/2 CheckMate-032 trial showed ORR of 12% in the nivolumab alone group in patients with chemotherapy-refractory G/GEJ cancer [53]. The phase 3 ATTRACTION-2 trial demonstrated significantly longer OS in the nivolumab alone group vs placebo (5.26 months vs. 4.14 months) in patients with advanced G/GEJ cancer refractory to at least two previous chemotherapies [45]. As a consequence, nivolumab was approved to treat advanced GC as a third-line therapy in Japan [46]. In addition, interim results of the phase 2 ATTRACTION-4 trial showed that nivolumab combined with standard chemotherapy showed promising efficacy as a first-line therapy for unresectable advanced or recurrent HER2-negative G/GEJ cancer [54]. The ATTRACTION-4 trial has proceeded to part 2 (phase 3) to compare nivolumab plus standard chemotherapy versus placebo plus standard chemotherapy. Another phase 3 trial (CheckMate-649) is ongoing to evaluate the efficacy and safety of nivolumab combined with standard chemotherapy or ipilimumab (anti-CTLA-4) as a first-line therapy in patients with advanced G/GEJ cancer [55].

There are many other ongoing clinical trials to evaluate the
The safety and efficacy of a variety of immune checkpoint inhibitors in patients with advanced G/GEJ cancer. These include tremelimumab (anti-CTLA-4) [56], avelumab (anti-PD-L1) [57,58], durvalumab (anti-PD-L1) [56,59], and relatlimab (anti-LAG3) [60]. Most of the trials are currently ongoing. A completed trial (JAVELIN Gastric 300) showed that treatment of patients with

Table 2. Summary of clinical trials of immunotherapy in locally advanced, recurrent, or metastatic gastric/gastroesophageal junction cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trials</th>
<th>Target</th>
<th>Phase</th>
<th>Treatment arms</th>
<th>Setting (line)</th>
<th>No. of patients</th>
<th>Results/primary endpoints</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pembrolizumab</td>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>1b</td>
<td>Pembrolizumab</td>
<td>Any with positive PD-L1</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>ORR (%): 22 (95% CI, 10–30; all PR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEYNOTE-059</td>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Pembrolizumab</td>
<td>≥3rd</td>
<td>259</td>
<td>ORR (%): 11.6 (95% CI, 8.0–16.1; CR in 2.3) Median response duration (mo): 8.4 (1.6+ to 17.3+) OS (mo): 5.6; PFS (mo): 2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEYNOTE-061</td>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Pembrolizumab Paclitaxel                                                     2nd</td>
<td>592 (335 with CPS ≥ 1)</td>
<td>763 with CPS ≥ 1</td>
<td>ORR (%): 10.6 vs. 12.5 vs. 11.1 (CPS ≥ 1) OS (mo): 17.4 vs. 12.3 vs. 10.8 (CPS ≥ 10) PFS (mo): 2.0 vs. 6.9 vs. 6.4 (CPS ≥ 1) PFS (mo): 2.9 vs. 5.7 vs. 6.1 (CPS ≥ 10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KEYNOTE-062</td>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Pembrolizumab vs Pembrolizumab + cisplatin + 5-FU or capecitabine Placebo + cisplatin + 5-FU or capecitabine</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>763 with CPS ≥ 1</td>
<td>12-mo OS rates (%): 39 vs. 35 vs. 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nivolumab (+ipilimumab)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nivolumab 3 mg/kg nivolumab 1 mg/kg + ipilimumab 3 mg/kg Nivolumab 3 mg/kg+ipilimumab 1 mg/kg</td>
<td>≥2nd</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>ORR (%): 12 vs. 24 vs. 8 (independent of PD-L1 status) 12-mo PFS rates (%): 8 vs. 17 vs. 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CheckMate-032</td>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>Nivolumab alone placebo</td>
<td>≥3rd</td>
<td>493</td>
<td>OS (mo): 5.26 vs. 4.14 (HR, 0.63; 95% CI, 0.51–0.78) 12-mo OS rates (%): 26.2 vs. 10.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONO-4539-12,</td>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Nivolumab alone placebo</td>
<td>≥3rd</td>
<td>493</td>
<td>ORR (%): 76.5 vs. 57.1 PFS (mo): 10.6 vs. 9.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATTRACTION-4,</td>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Nivolumab + oxaliplatin + capecitabine</td>
<td>1st</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part 1 [54]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nivolumab + oxaliplatin + S-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATTRACTION-4,</td>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Nivolumab + oxaliplatin + S-1 or capecitabine Placebo + oxaliplatin + S-1 or capecitabine</td>
<td>1st Approx.</td>
<td>650</td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>part 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nivolumab + ipilimumab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CheckMate-649</td>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Nivolumab + ipilimumab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTLA-4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nivolumab + oxaliplatin + 5-FU or capecitabine Oxaliplatin + 5-FU or capecitabine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Avelumab BSC after response or stability to oxaliplatin + fluoropyrimidine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JAVELIN Gastric 100</td>
<td>PD-L1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Avelumab Pacitaxel or irinotecan</td>
<td></td>
<td>499</td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JAVELIN Gastric 300</td>
<td>PD-L1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Avelumab BSC after response or stability to oxaliplatin + fluoropyrimidine</td>
<td></td>
<td>371</td>
<td>OS (mo): 4.6 vs. 5.0 (HR, 1.1; 95% CI, 0.9–1.4) PFS (mo): 1.4 vs. 2.7 (HR, 1.73; 95% CI, 1.4–2.2) ORR (%): 2.2 vs. 4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCT02340975</td>
<td>PD-L1</td>
<td>1b/2</td>
<td>Durvalumab (anti–PD-L1) Tremelimumab (anti–CTLA-4) Durvalumab + tremelimumab</td>
<td>≥2nd</td>
<td>94 (phase 2; as of Sep 13, 2017)</td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCT01968109</td>
<td>PD-1</td>
<td>1/2a</td>
<td>Relatlimab (anti–LAG3) vs. Relatlimab + nivolumab</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ongoing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PD-1, programmed death-1; PD-L1, programmed death-ligand 1; ORR, objective response rate; CI, confidence interval; PR, partial response; CR, complete response; OS, overall survival; PFS, progression-free survival; CPS, Combined Positive Score for PD-L1; HR, hazard ratio; CI, confidence interval; 5-FU, 5-fluorouracil; CTLA-4, cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated protein 4; LAG-3, lymphocyte-activation gene 3.**

*+ indicates that patients had no progressive disease at their last assessment.*
G/GEJ cancer with single-agent avelumab in the third-line setting did not demonstrate improved OS or progression-free survival (PFS) compared with standard chemotherapy [57]. The completed and ongoing immunotherapy clinical trials in locally advanced, recurrent, or metastatic G/GEJ cancers are summarized in Table 2.

**BIOMARKERS FOR IMMUNOTHERAPY IN GASTRIC CANCER PATIENTS**

**IHC of PD-L1**

PD-1 was first discovered in 1992 by Honjo and colleagues [61]. PD-1 is mainly expressed on activated cytotoxic T cells and other immune cells [51,62]. Within the tumor microenvironment, PD-L1 and PD-L2 can upregulate their expression in cancer cells [62]. In several previous studies and currently published genomic profiles, PD-L1 expression has been observed in more than 40% of GC; it is particularly specific for EBV-positive and MSI-H subtypes [37,63-65].

The PD-L1 IHC 22C3 pharmDx assay on the Autostainer Link 48 platform is the FDA-approved companion diagnostic assay to help identify recurrent or metastatic G/GEJ adenocarcinoma in patients who could be treated with pembrolizumab [49,50]. PD-L1 expression assessed by this assay can be quantified by the CPS method (Fig. 2), which is the number of PD-L1 staining cells (tumor cells, lymphocytes, and macrophages) divided by the total number of viable tumor cells, multiplied by 100. If the result of the calculation exceeds 100, the maximum score is regarded as CPS 100 [66]. A tumor with CPS≥1 score is considered positive for PD-L1 expression. For adequate evaluation, at least 100 viable tumor cells are needed in a stained slide [66]. At 20× magnification, partial or complete membrane staining of viable tumor cells and membrane and/or cytoplasmic staining of mononuclear inflammatory cells within tumor and peri-tumoral areas were evaluated, respectively [66]. Another interpretation of PD-L1 expression is the tumor proportion score (TPS), which is evaluation of membrane staining of PD-L1 expression on tumor cells. The Asian ATTRACTION-2 study, which determined the efficacy of nivolumab in advanced G/GEJ adenocarcinoma, retrospectively evaluated PD-L1 expression by PD-L1 IHC 28-8 pharmDx assay (Dako, Carpinteria, CA, USA); PD-L1 positivity was defined as TPS ≥ 1 [46]. Of note, the ATTRACTION-2 study showed that nivolumab had significant benefit in all patients, regardless of PD-L1 expression [46]. The PD-L1 IHC 28-8 pharmDx assay gained FDA approval as a complementary diagnostic test for nivolumab as second line treatment for advanced non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC) [67].

**Fig. 2.** Representative figure of PD-L1 22C3 PharmDx assay. Most tumor cells show membranous staining. Some immune cells adjacent to tumor cells also had immunoreactivity to programmed death-ligand 1.

**Microsatellite instability**

MSI-H GC was proposed as a distinct subgroup of GCs by two large scale molecular studies, The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) and the Asian Cancer Research Group classification [65,68,69]. The incidence of MSI-H GCs varies between countries and ethnicity, ranging from 5.6 to 22.7% [65,68,70-73]. MSI-H GCs are associated with antrum location, female gender, relatively older age, earlier stage, and Lauren intestinal type [72]. The presence of dMMR results in tumor cells accumulating frequent genetic mutations. With high mutational burden, tumor cells produce several neo-antigens that trigger T cell activation and recruitment. As the tumor immune reaction increases, expression of checkpoint molecules in tumor cells and immune cells is upregulated [69]. MSI-H GCs are significantly related to both high TILs and high expression of PD-L1 [74,75]. This has been confirmed by several previous genomic profiling studies [76]. On the basis of these hypotheses, recent studies have suggested that MSI-H status may be used as a biomarker for treatment selection with immune-checkpoint inhibitors [50,69]. In Korean patients with metastatic and/or recurrent GC, almost all patients with MSI-H GCs achieve a dramatic response with pembrolizumab alone [75].

Because accurate and reliable evaluation of MSI status is important for treatment decisions, more sensitive, more precise, and faster techniques are required [69]. Three representative methods are currently used to detect GCs with dMMR: polymerase chain reaction (PCR), IHC, and next-generation sequencing (NGS). First, PCR amplification with specific primers for microsatellite repeats is a conventional method using capillary gel
electrophoresis [77]. By comparing the allelic position of a microsatellite locus in tumor tissue and corresponding normal tissue, MSI can be determined by peak patterns with a shift [69,77]. The National Cancer Institute recommends the Bethesda Panel, which is composed of five microsatellite markers specific for two mononucleotide repeats (BAT25 and BAT26) and three dinucleotide repeats (D5S346, D2S123, and D17S250) [69,77,78]. Another MSI test is composed of a pentaplex panel of quasi-monomorphic mononucleotide markers (NR-27, NR-21, NR-24, BAT-25, and BAT-26) [77,79]. MSI-H is designated when a size shift is identified in at least two of five microsatellites loci [77]. Second, IHC is assessed by expression or total loss of mismatch repair (MMR) proteins (MLH1, MSH2, PMS2, and MSH6) [77]. Loss of expression in one or more MMR proteins is defined as dMMR. Compared with the PCR-based method, IHC has high sensitivity and specificity (more than 90%, respectively) [77,80], but a combination of both methods increases sensitivity. Although IHC allows the determination of which MMR gene is defective, GCs with MSI-H are mainly caused by epigenetic inactivation of MMR genes (hypermethylation of CpG island methylator pathway and hMLH1 silencing) [65,68,72,73]. Therefore, loss of MLH1 and PMS2 was predominantly found in sporadic GCs (~95.8%), unlike with Lynch syndrome [72]. Interestingly, BRAFV600E mutation has not been found in MSI-H GCs, unlike in MSI-H sporadic colorectal cancer [69,81]. Recently developed NGS-based methods cover a broader range of microsatellite loci. However, NGS has several disadvantages: (1) high investment costs per sample; (2) longer run time; and (3) experiential bioinformatics analysis [69,82].

**Epstein-Barr virus**

EBV-positive GCs constitute a unique subgroup of GCs in the TCGA with several distinct clinicopathologic characteristics, including abundant TILs, male predominance, relatively young age, earlier stage, and favorable prognosis [65,72,73,76]. The incidence of EBV-positive GCs also varies with country and ethnicity, with a range of 2%–20.1% and a worldwide average of nearly 10% [65,72,73,77,83,84]. EBV-positive GCs display CD-KN2A (p16INK4A) promoter hyper-methylation, and PD-L1/L2 expression was elevated in genomic profiling, in which IL-12–mediated signaling signatures induced robust presence of immune cells [65,85]. Nearly 50% of EBV-positive GCs showed high expression of PD-L1 [86]. In Korean patients with metastatic and/or recurrent GCs, the patients with EBV-positive GCs achieved dramatic response with pembrolizumab alone [75]. This study suggests that EBV-positive GCs may be good candidates for pembrolizumab monotherapy [75]. Another open-label, multi-arm phase II trial (NCT02951091) is testing the efficacy of nivolumab in EBV-positive GCs as second-line treatment [87]. EBV-positive GCs are commonly accompanied by more extensive infiltration of CD8-positive cytotoxic T cells and IFN-γ, which induce expression of IDO, a potent immune cell inhibitor [76,85]. The IFN-γ driven gene signature, an additional proposed marker of sensitivity to anti–PD-1 treatment, was enriched in EBV-positive GCs [76]. EBV infection demonstrates four latency patterns depending on combinations of latent gene products during the EBV latency cycle: latency Ia, Ib, II, and III. EBV-positive GC demonstrates the latency I pattern, which is limited to EBV-encoded small RNAs (EBERs), BamHI-A rightward transcripts, and Epstein-Barr nuclear antigen 1 [87,88]. The presence of latent membrane protein (LMP) 2A can distinguish latency type Ia or Ib, and LMP2A is expressed in over 50% of EBV-positive GCs [87].

In situ hybridization (ISH) detection of EBER in tumor cells is considered the gold standard to identify the presence of EBV in tissue samples (Fig. 3) [77,89]. EBER ISH allows examination of paraffin sections from surgical excision and biopsy specimens or on cytology preparations [77]. This method uses light microscopy to demonstrate EBER transcripts concentrated in the nuclei of latently infected cells. Cells are considered EBV positive if brown or blue staining is detected in GC cell nuclei. Commercially available EBER probes are labeled with biotin, digoxigenin, or fluorescein (Ventana Medical Systems, Tucson, AZ, USA; Dako, Glostrup, Denmark; Enzo Diagnostics, Farmingdale, NY, USA; Kreatech Diagnostics, Amsterdam, The Neth-

![Fig. 3. Representative figure of Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) in situ hybridization. This case was diagnosed as gastric carcinoma with lymphoid stroma. EBV-positive cells highlight tumor cell clusters that form vague glandular structures.](https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2019.10.08)
Tumor mutational burden

Tumor mutational burden (TMB), a new predictive biomarker for response to immunotherapy, is a quantitative measure of the total number of somatic nonsynonymous mutations per megabase of genome examined in the DNA of cancer cells [92]. Accumulating data have shown that TMB, or mutational load, is associated with good response to immunotherapy and improved survival [92-96]. Tumors with higher TMB are hypothesized to be more likely to express neoantigens that can be recognized by the immune system in response to immune checkpoint inhibitors [92,97]. The recent CheckMate 227 trial showed that PFS increased in patients with NSCLC treated with nivolumab plus ipilimumab as first-line chemotherapy in tumors with high (≥10 mutations per megabase [Mb]) TMB, regardless of PD-L1 expression [96]. According to this trial, TMB is a promising biomarker for predicting immunotherapy and could lead the way for immuno-oncology entering the era of precision medicine [97]. Clinical trial NCT02915432, which investigated the safety and efficacy of toripalimab in Chinese advanced GC patients, demonstrated that patients with high TMB showed significant treatment response and OS benefit compared with patients with low TMB [98].

TMB can be measured by whole-exome sequencing (WES) or targeted sequencing panels using NGS [92]. Standardized and stabilized sample processing and methodology are crucial factors that influence the reproducibility of TMB measurements [92]. Initial TMB measurements were assessed by WES using tumor tissue and corresponding non-tumor tissue. Because most WES protocols require a minimum of 150–200 ng of genomic DNA, a limited amount of DNA in small biopsy samples is sometimes problematic [92]. The ability to detect somatic nucleic variants depends on allele frequency within a tumor as well as on sequencing depth [92]. Theoretically, at 50 × coverage, if an allele frequency of the specific variant is at least 15%, 95% of single nucleotide variants and short insertions and deletions can consistently be identified [92,99]. Unfortunately, WES has some disadvantages: (1) high cost; (2) extensive analysis; and (3) data management [92]. Gene-targeted sequencing panels using NGS have advantages compared with WES: (1) lower sequencing cost; (2) deeper sequencing despite small amount of DNA; (3) higher sensitivity for mutation detection; and (4) shorter turnaround time [92]. Chalmers et al. [100] demonstrated that comprehensive genomic profiling with the FoundationOne assay targeting ~1.1 Mb of the coding genome can accurately evaluate TMB compared to WES and has high correlation. Some commercial gene panels are now available, such as the Ion Torrent Oncomine Tumor Mutation Load Assay (Thermo Fisher Scientific, Waltham, MA, USA), which targets 1.7 Mb of the genome in 409 key cancer genes.

BEYOND PD-1/PD-L1: NEW TARGETS OR COMBINATION THERAPY

While anti–PD-1/PD-L1 therapy has proved successful in GC, many patients do not respond to this treatment or develop resistance. To overcome this limitation of current immunotherapy, a number of ongoing studies are investigating new biomarkers and future strategies for GC treatment. Recently, new immune checkpoints such as LAG-3, TIM-3, and IDO have been suggested as therapeutic targets.

LAG-3 is a member of the immunoglobulin superfamily that acts as a co-inhibitory receptor expressed on exhausted TILs [101]. It may reduce T cell responses by interacting with MHC class II on antigen presenting cells. A previous study by Woo et al. [102] showed that LAG-3 expression is upregulated on TILs, inhibiting T cell immunity and reducing IFN-γ production within the PD-1 upregulated tumor microenvironment. Co-expression of PD-1 and LAG-3 was demonstrated by in vivo study in a murine cancer model, and LAG-3/PD-1 expression was mostly restricted to TILs. This suggests that combination immunotherapy targeting LAG-3 and PD-1 could magnify tumor-specific responses and avoid non-specific autoimmune responses. Several trials assessing the efficacy of combination therapy of immune checkpoint inhibitors are currently ongoing [103]. The FRACTION-GC trial is investigating whether nivolumab in combination with anti–LAG-3 or anti–IDO inhibitor is more effective than nivolumab in combination with ipilimumab (anti–CTLA-4) in treating patients with advanced GC (NCT 02935634). Another trial starting soon will determine the effectiveness of anti–LAG-3 inhibitor+nivolumab alone or in combination with conventional chemotherapy in participants with G/GEJ adenocarcinoma that recurred or metastasized after prior therapy (NCT03704077).

TIM-3 is another co-inhibitory receptor expressed on T cells
that induces T cell anergy, apoptosis, and exhaustion through interaction with galectin-9 on immune cells [104]. Additionally, TIM-3 can competitively bind to HMGB1 protein, impairing HMGB1-mediated recruitment of nucleic acids into endosomes, an essential step for DNA sensing by the innate immune system [105]. Because of the T cell exhaustion function, TIM-3 has been suggested as an attractive immunotherapy target [106]. A previous study using murine cancer models showed that combined TIM-3/PD-1 blockade is more effective in controlling tumor growth compared to single blockade of TIM-3 or PD-1 [106]. Another in vivo study confirmed that dual blockade of TIM-3 and PD-1 improved the antitumor function of cancer CD8-negative T cells [106]. An ongoing Phase 1 trial is evaluating the safety of anti-TIM-3 inhibitor administered alone or in combination with anti–PD-L1 antibody in participants with advanced or relapsed solid tumors (NCT03099109).

IDO is a catabolic enzyme produced by Tregs and macrophages to convert tryptophan into kynurenine [107]. IDO-mediated tryptophan deficiency activates naïve T cells and causes them to differentiate into Tregs, causing immune tolerance. In addition, kynurenine converted from tryptophan by IDO also has an immunosuppressive role [108,109]. A study using a melanoma mouse model showed that combinations of CTLA-4 or PD-1/PD-L1 with IDO blockade restored both CD8-positive T cell proliferation and IL-2 production, suggesting the possibility of an IDO inhibitor as a therapeutic option [110]. IDO inhibitors are clinically developing for a variety of cancers, although some trials were stopped due to lack of efficacy [108].

Because of its central role in tumor immunity, HLA molecules could be biomarkers in future immunotherapy. In a previous study of malignant melanoma, down-regulation of the HLA I molecule was suggested as a potential mechanism of resistance to PD-1 blockade therapy [111]. For sophisticated patient selection, confirmation of HLA I molecule downregulation could become essential. A recent study by Chowell et al. [112] reported that zygosity at HLA loci or certain HLA alleles may influence immunotherapy survival. The authors suggested that greater diversity within the HLA I molecule would result in a larger repertoire of neoantigens for presentation. Through HLA genotype data of cancer patients, homozygosity in at least one HLA class I locus was significantly associated with poor prognosis for immunotherapy. Hence, patient HLA genotype might be utilized as a biomarker for immunotherapy discovery.

CONCLUSION

Due to important contributions of past research and clinical trials, immunotherapy is now regarded as an important option for treating patients with advanced GC. The mechanism of the tumor immune reaction is complicated; however, understanding of immune responses to cancer cell is crucial for advanced patient selection. MSI and EBV status are regarded as significant prognostic markers in patients with GC. Along with PD-L1 IHC, MSI, and EBV status are now clinically utilized as predictive markers for immunotherapy. Several ongoing studies and clinical trials are validating the efficacy of novel immunotherapy targeting immune checkpoint molecules including LAG-3, TIM-3, and IDO. As demonstrated by previous clinical trials, immunotherapy will greatly improve survival of patients with GC in the future. Thus, research in immuno-oncology should continue, including studies investigating novel biomarkers and clinical trials.

ORCID

Yoonjin Kwak: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-5314-2465
An Na Seo: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-6412-3067
Hee Eun Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-6335-7312
Hye Seung Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-1667-7986

Author Contributions

Conceptualization: HSL
Funding acquisition: HSL
Investigation: YK, ANS, HEL, HSL
Methodology: YK, ANS, HEL, HSL
Supervision: HSL
Writing—original draft: YK, ANS, HEL, HSL
Writing—review & editing: YK, HSL

Conflicts of Interest

H.S.L., a contributing editor of the Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine, was not involved in the editorial evaluation or decision to publish this article. All remaining authors have declared no conflicts of interest.

Funding

This research was supported by a Basic Science Research Program through the National Research Foundation (NRF) funded by the Ministry of Education, Republic of Korea (NRF-2016R1D1A1B03931744).
REFERENCES


Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) is a proto-oncogene that encodes epidermal growth factor receptor with tyrosine kinase activity, located on chromosome 17 at q21. In breast cancers, HER2 gene is amplified in 15%-20% of invasive breast cancers and its amplification is closely linked to HER2 protein overexpression \[1,2\]. HER2 amplification is a poor prognostic factor associated with a high rate of recurrence and mortality, and is a predictive factor for response to anthracycline-based chemotherapies in patients with breast cancer \[1,2\]. Most importantly, it is a sole predictive marker for treatment benefits from HER2-targeting agents such as trastuzumab, lapatinib, and pertuzumab. As HER2-targeted therapy is exclusively effective in HER2-overexpressed and/or HER2-amplified breast cancers, precise assessment of HER2 status is an essential step for treatment of breast cancer. In this review, we focused on changes in the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO)/College of American Pathologists (CAP) guidelines on HER2 interpretation and some pitfalls in the interpretation of HER2 status in breast cancers.

### METHODS OF HER2 TESTING

Currently, immunohistochemistry (IHC), fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), and chromogenic in situ hybridization (CISH) including silver in situ hybridization (SISH) are regarded as standard methods for determination of HER2 status in breast cancer, and some of them have been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for HER2 testing in breast cancer since 1998.

Although HER2 status can be directly tested by in situ hybridization (ISH), many laboratories have adopted IHC as a screening test, and FISH as a confirmation test for HER2 IHC equivocal cases, considering higher failure rate, longer procedure time and higher reagent cost of FISH, compared to that of IHC. Moreover,
high concordance has been found between HER2 protein over-expression by IHC and gene amplification by FISH [3-5]. Finally, the 2007 ASCO/CAP guidelines stated that HER2 status should be initially assessed by IHC using a semi-quantitative scoring system (Fig. 1), and confirmed by FISH in all IHC score 2+ equivocal cases [6].

Bright-field in situ hybridization such as CISH and SISH has advantage in that it allows histologic evaluation of tumors, utilizes ordinary microscope, leaves permanent signals for archival storage, and can be fully automated [7]. Moreover, it shows more than 95% concordance rate with FISH [8-11]. Thus, CISH and SISH are now admitted as an alternative to FISH.

**CHANGES IN GUIDELINES ON INTERPRETATION OF HER2 STATUS**

For uniformity in accuracy and reproducibility of HER2 testing in breast cancer, ASCO/CAP jointly released guidelines and recommendations for HER2 testing first in 2007, addressing a wide range of pre-analytic, analytic, and post-analytic variables [6]. This guideline focused on limiting the false-positive results, adopting a higher cutoff of 30% for HER2 IHC positivity (3+), instead of 10% cutoff previously recommended by FDA (Table 1). For FISH analysis, HER2 gene was regarded as amplified if HER2/chromosome enumeration probe 17 (CEP17) ratio > 2.2 for dual-probe assay (instead of the previously recommended ratio of 2.0) or HER2 gene copy > 6 signals per cell for single-probe assay.

After then, the revised 2013 ASCO/CAP guideline focused on maximizing identification of patients who can benefit from HER2-targeted therapy and minimizing false-negative results [12]. The range of HER2 IHC equivocal cases (2+) was widened, and HER2 IHC 3+ was defined using 10% as cutoff value, not using 30% (Table 1). When using validated dual-probe

![Fig. 1. Representative examples of human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) immunohistochemistry (IHC) in breast cancer. (A) HER2 IHC negative (0). (B) HER2 IHC negative (1+). (C) HER2 IHC equivocal (2+). (D) HER2 IHC positive (3+).](https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2019.11.03)
Ahn S et al.

Table 1. Changes in the ASCO/CAP guidelines: interpretation of HER2 immunohistochemistry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive (3+)</td>
<td>Uniform intense membrane staining of &gt;30% of invasive tumor cells</td>
<td>Circumferential membrane staining that is complete, intense, and in &gt;10% of tumor cells</td>
<td>Circumferential membrane staining that is complete, intense, and in &gt;10% of tumor cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equivocal (2+)</td>
<td>Complete membrane staining that is either non-uniform or weak in intensity but with obvious circumferential distribution in at least 10% of cells</td>
<td>Circumferential membrane staining that is incomplete and/or weak to moderate and within &gt;10% of the invasive tumor cells</td>
<td>Weak to moderate complete membrane staining observed in &gt;10% of tumor cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative (1+)</td>
<td>Weak incomplete membrane staining in any proportion of tumor cells</td>
<td>Incomplete membrane staining that is faint or barely perceptible and within &gt;10% of the invasive tumor cells</td>
<td>Incomplete membrane staining that is faint or barely perceptible and within &gt;10% of the invasive tumor cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative (0)</td>
<td>No staining observed</td>
<td>No staining observed</td>
<td>No staining observed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ASCO, American Society of Clinical Oncology; CAP, College of American Pathologists; HER2, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2; IHC, immunohistochemistry.

*Unusual staining patterns of HER2 by IHC can be encountered that are not covered by these definitions. As one example, some specific subtypes of breast cancers can show IHC staining that is moderate to intense but incomplete (basolateral or lateral) and can be found to be HER2 amplified. Another example is circumferential membrane staining that is intense but in ≤10% tumor cells. Such cases can be considered equivocal (2+).

Table 2. Changes in the ASCO/CAP guidelines: interpretation of HER2 status using dual-probe in situ hybridization assay

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ISH positive</td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio &gt;2.2</td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio ≥ 2.0</td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio ≥ 2.0 and average HER2 copy number ≥ 4.0 (group 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio &lt; 2.0 and average HER2 copy number ≥ 6.0</td>
<td>Her2/CEP17 ratio ≥ 2.0 and average HER2 copy number &lt; 4.0 (group 2) with concurrent IHC 3+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio &lt; 2.0 and average HER2 copy number ≥ 6.0 (group 3) with concurrent IHC 2+a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISH equivocal</td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio of 1.8-2.2</td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio &lt; 2.0 with average HER2 copy number ≥ 4.0 and &lt; 6.0 (group 4) with concurrent IHC 3+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISH negative</td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio of &lt;1.8</td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio &lt; 2.0 with average HER2 copy number &lt; 4.0 (group 5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio &lt; 2.0 with average HER2 copy number &lt; 4.0 (group 2) with concurrent IHC 2+a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HER2/CEP17 ratio &lt; 2.0 with average HER2 copy number ≥ 4.0 and &lt; 6.0 (group 4) with concurrent IHC 2+a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ASCO, American Society of Clinical Oncology; CAP, College of American Pathologists; HER2, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2; IHC, immunohistochemistry.

*An additional observer blinded to previous result recounts ISH. If the repeated ISH result is categorized to the same group, it is finally regarded as HER2 positive; *An additional observer blinded to previous result recounts ISH. If the repeated ISH result is designated to same ISH group, it is finally regarded as HER2 negative.

ISH assay, HER2/CEP17 ratio ≥2.0 or HER2/CEP17 ratio < 2.0 and average HER2 copy number ≥6.0 was regarded as ISH positive (Table 2). The 2007 and 2013 ASCO/CAP guidelines included ISH equivocal results, which had been a problem for clinical decision making.

Since the publication of the 2013 guideline, several laboratories and clinical investigators have reported on the practical implications of the 2013 guidelines and increased frequencies of equivocal results [13]. The HER2 testing Expert Panel wished to clarify controversial issues in the 2013 guideline, and in that context the 2018 updated ASCO/CAP guidelines on HER2 testing was reported [13]. The updated guideline addressed five clinical questions. The first question was about the definition of HER2 IHC 2+, and it was revised as weak to moderate com-
plete membrane staining observed in >10% of tumor cells. The second question was about repeated HER2 test of initially negative case, and it was recommended that if the initial HER2 testing result in a core needle biopsy specimen is negative, a new HER2 test may (not “must”) be ordered on the excision specimen based on specific clinical criteria. These two clinical questions were addressed in a previous correspondence by the Expert Panel [14]. The remaining three questions were about less common ISH patterns, and the updated HER2 testing algorithm addressed the workup for these three clinical scenarios, occasionally found when using a dual-probe ISH assay. These scenarios were described as ISH group 2 (HER2/CEP17 ratio ≥ 2.0; average HER2 copy number < 4.0 signals per cell), ISH group 3 (HER2/CEP17 ratio < 2.0; average HER2 copy number ≥ 6.0 signals per cell), and ISH group 4 (HER2/CEP17 ratio < 2.0; average HER2 copy number ≥ 4.0 and < 6.0 signals per cell) [13]. The diagnostic approach includes more rigorous interpretation criteria for ISH and requires concomitant IHC review for dual-probe ISH groups 2 to 4 to achieve the most accurate determination of HER2 status based on combined interpretation of the ISH and IHC assay [13]. It was recommended that laboratories using single-probe ISH assays include concomitant IHC review as part of the interpretation of all ISH assay results [13]. By this approach, the HER2 status was designated to positive or negative with no equivocal category.

Although complicated, HER2 status is basically determined by IHC results in the dual-probe ISH groups 2 to 4. While cases with HER2 IHC 3+ are regarded as HER2 positive, those with HER2 IHC 0 or 1+ are regarded as HER2 negative. In cases with HER2 IHC 2+, an additional observer blinded to previous result recounts ISH. As for ISH groups 2 and 4, if the repeated ISH result is designated to the same ISH group, it is finally regarded as HER2 negative. On the contrary, as for ISH group 3, if the repeated ISH result is categorized to the same group, it is finally regarded as HER2 positive. If the repeated ISH shows other ISH result, the results should be adjudicated per internal procedures to determine final category. The changes on HER2 interpretation in the updated 2018 ASCO/CAP guidelines in comparison with previous 2007 and 2013 guidelines are summarized in Tables 1 and 2.

Recent studies on implementation of the updated 2018 ASCO/CAP guidelines have shown significant increases of HER2 negative rates through reclassification of ISH equivocal cases by the 2013 guidelines [15-17]. The updated guidelines seem to provide much clearer instructions for HER2 status designation by using concomitant IHC review in ISH groups 2, 3 and 4, and eliminating ISH equivocal category [15].

**COMPLICATING FACTORS FOR HER2 INTERPRETATION**

**Intratumoral HER2 heterogeneity**

HER2 status has been thought to be fairly homogeneous within a tumor. However, intratumoral heterogeneity of HER2 gene amplification, that is, intratumoral HER2 heterogeneity, is found in a subset of breast cancers. It has important clinical implications, in that it can contribute to inaccurate assessment of HER2 status and affect treatment responses to HER2-targeted therapy [18]. In previous studies, our group has shown that intratumoral HER2 heterogeneity is more common in breast cancer with equivocal HER2 protein expression and low-grade HER2 gene amplification [19,20]. Intratumoral HER2 heterogeneity was associated with poor clinical outcome in patients with HER2-positive primary breast cancer [19]. Moreover, it was related to poor response to trastuzumab and decreased survival in patients with HER2-positive metastatic breast cancer [20]. In a subsequent study, Lee et al. [21] reported that cases with HER2 regional heterogeneity showed a decreased disease-free survival rate compared to those without heterogeneity in the hormone receptor-positive subgroup of breast cancer patients treated with adjuvant trastuzumab. In a neoadjuvant setting, intratumoral HER2 heterogeneity was also found to be associated with incomplete response to anti-HER2 chemotherapy [22].

The CAP addressed this issue and published a separate recommendation in 2009 and defined HER2 genetic heterogeneity as the presence of tumor cells with HER2/CEP17 signal ratios greater than 2.2 in 5% to 50% of the tumor cells tested [23]. However, this recommendation has some problems, in that it was based on expert opinion rather than evidence, and artificial heterogeneity caused by technical issues could be regarded as HER2 genetic heterogeneity. Finally, the 2013 ASCO/CAP guidelines added a recommendation about HER2 heterogeneity for HER2 ISH interpretation, stating that if there is a second population of cells with increased HER2 signals/cell and this cell population is more than 10% of tumor cells on the slide, a separate counting of at least 20 non-overlapping cells must also be performed within this cell population and reported [12].

HER2 heterogeneity can be found as distinct clusters of amplified cells among non-amplified cells or appear as intermixed amplified and non-amplified cells (Fig. 2). Basically, it is important to scan all fields when observing ISH slide and to match it with HER2 IHC slide to detect areas with HER2 heterogeneity.
Fig. 2. A representative breast cancer with intratumoral human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) heterogeneity. (A) HER2 immunohistochemistry shows heterogeneous expression with strong, complete membranous expression on the right, and weak to moderate, incomplete membranous expression on the left. (B) HER2 silver in situ hybridization reveals high-level amplification on the right and no amplification on the left (inset, area of high-level amplification).

Table 3. Assessment of HER2 heterogeneity in breast cancer

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suggestions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The pathologist should scan entire HER2 ISH slide before counting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Review of HER2 IHC slide is helpful to find areas with potential HER2 amplification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>From this point of view, CISH or SISH has an advantage to evaluate HER2 heterogeneity, because it can be easily matched with HER2 IHC slide under light microscope.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If there is a subpopulation of tumor cells with HER2 amplification comprising &gt;10% of tumor cells on the slide, a separate counting should be performed within the subpopulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The HER2/CEP17 ratios or HER2 gene copy number should be calculated for both amplified and non-amplified areas separately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If possible, it is recommended that in situ hybridization report includes proportion of amplified cells within a tumor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HER2, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2; IHC, immunohistochemistry; CISH, chromogenic in situ hybridization; SISH, silver in situ hybridization; CEP17, chromosome enumeration probe 17.

From this point of view, CISH or SISH has an advantage in evaluating HER2 heterogeneity, because it can be easily matched with HER2 IHC slide under light microscope. The HER2/CEP17 ratios or HER2 copy number should be calculated separately for amplified and non-amplified areas. Suggestions for how to assess intratumoral HER2 heterogeneity are summarized in Table 3 [24,25].

CEP17 copy number gain

CEP17 copy number gain is a genetic change commonly observed during dual-probe HER2 ISH for breast cancer, with reported frequency of 3% to 46% in breast cancers [26]. In our study using 945 cases of invasive breast cancer, CEP17 copy number gain was observed in 29.9% when using the definition of CEP17 copy number gain as mean CEP17 ≥ 2.6, and was found in 19.7% with the definition of CEP17 copy number gain as CEP17 ≥ 3.0 [27]. This had been thought to result from increasing numbers of whole chromosome 17, which is referred to as polysomy 17. However, subsequent studies have revealed that true polysomy 17 is a rare phenomenon in breast cancers, and CEP17 copy number gain results from amplification or copy number gain in the centromeric or pericentromeric region [28-32].

Although it is still controversial, CEP17 copy number gain has been found to be associated with increased HER2 protein expression [27,33-35]. However, CEP17 copy number gain without HER2 gene amplification was not associated with benefit from HER2-targeted therapy in breast cancers [36,37]. Moreover, CEP17 copy number gain in breast cancers has been reported to be associated with adverse clinicopathological features [27,38-40] and response to anthracycline-based therapy in breast cancer [41,42]. However, as for its prognostic significance, there have been conflicting results [43-46]. Recently, our group has shown that CEP17 copy number gain is an independent poor prognostic factor in patients with luminal/HER2-negative breast cancers, suggesting that CEP17 copy number gain may reflect chromosomal instability in breast cancer [27].
CEP17 copy number gain may affect the interpretation of HER2 ISH, and lead to an underestimation of HER2 status. Therefore, the 2013 ASCO/CAP guideline recommended to repeat HER2 testing using an alternative probe for CEP17 or for another gene in chromosome 17 not expected to co-amplify with HER2 for the ISH equivocal cases (now ISH group 4 in the updated 2018 ASCO/CAP guideline) [12,26]. However, following studies have shown that with alternative probes, HER2 ISH equivocal cases were upgraded to HER2 ISH positive status in a significant proportion, and clinicopathologic features of those upgraded cases were not compatible with those of HER2-amplified breast cancers, suggesting that use of alternative probe is not reliable in clinical practice [32,47]. The updated 2018 ASCO/CAP guidelines do not recommend the use of alternative probe as standard practice due to limited evidence on its analytical and clinical validity [13].

Changes in HER2 status after neoadjuvant chemotherapy

Neoadjuvant chemotherapy (NAC) is currently considered as standard treatment for locally advanced breast cancer [48]. Alteration of biomarker status after NAC is occasionally found in breast cancer [49,50]. Hormone receptor status changed more often than HER2 status, and as for hormone receptors, positive to negative conversion was more common than negative to positive conversion [51,52]. The frequency of HER2 change after NAC is reported in up to 15%, and both positive to negative conversion and negative to positive conversion were found with no preponderance [51,52]. Previous studies on HER2 change after NAC are summarized in Table 4. In our study, HER2 status was altered after NAC in 3.4% with positive to negative conversion in 0.9% and negative to positive conversion in 2.5% [52]. Most cases with negative to positive conversion of HER2 status after NAC showed low level of HER2 amplification, and the HER2/CEP17 ratio ranged from 2.2 to 4.4 (data not shown in a previous study) [52]. Cockburn et al. [61] also reported the mean HER2/CEP17 ratio in resection specimens with HER2 positive conversion was 3.7. Although there are no guidelines about whether treatment should be modified based on altered biomarker status after NAC, the change of HER2 status may have an impact on the therapeutic management in certain patients. Accordingly, re-evaluation of biomarkers including HER2 after NAC is recommended for proper management.

The mechanism of HER2 conversion after NAC is not well understood. This can be partly explained by the selection of HER2-positive or HER2-negative clones after NAC, tumor heterogeneity, and pre-analytical and analytical pitfalls, Guarneri et al. [67] evaluated HER2 status change on 107 HER2-positive patients treated with NAC with or without anti-HER2 agents. They reported that patients with tumors undergoing HER2 negative conversion following treatment had significantly reduced disease-free survival compared to patients with maintained HER2 positivity [67]. However, the prognostic significance of HER2 status change is still unclear.

Finally, caution is needed in interpretation of HER2 ISH after NAC in distinguishing between a true HER2 amplification and increase of HER2 copy number by chromosome 17 polysomy [68]. Increase in HER2 copy number could not be attributed to true HER2 amplifications, but instead could reflect polyploid-

Table 4. Summary of the previous studies on HER2 status alteration after neoadjuvant chemotherapy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Total No. of cases</th>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Frequency of HER2 alteration, n (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>De La Cruz et al. [53]</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>Total 2/54 (3.7) + to 1/54 (1.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>– to + 1/54 (1.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2018</td>
<td>Ahn et al. [52]</td>
<td>442</td>
<td>IHC/SISH</td>
<td>15/442 (3.4) 4/442 (0.9) 11/442 (2.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Xian et al. [54]</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>6/77 (7.8) 5/77 (6.5) 1/77 (1.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Reddy et al. [55]</td>
<td>140</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>8/97 (8.2) 5/97 (5.2) 3/97 (3.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Gahlaut et al. [56]</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>8/133 (6.0) 5/133 (3.8) 3/133 (2.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Lim et al. [57]</td>
<td>290</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>17/290 (5.9) 17/290 (5.9) 0/290 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2016</td>
<td>Zhou et al. [58]</td>
<td>107</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>5/107 (4.7) 3/107 (2.8) 2/107 (1.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Jin et al. [59]</td>
<td>423</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>40/423 (9.5) 27/423 (6.4) 13/423 (3.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Yang et al. [60]</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>IHC</td>
<td>17/113 (15.0) 9/113 (8.0) 8/113 (7.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Cockburn et al. [61]</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>16/133 (12.0) 9/133 (6.8) 7/133 (5.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Lee et al. [62]</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>11/107 (10.3) 6/107 (5.6) 5/107 (4.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Hirata et al. [63]</td>
<td>368</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>35/368 (9.5) 22/368 (6.0) 13/368 (3.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Kasami et al. [64]</td>
<td>173</td>
<td>IHC/FISH</td>
<td>0/173 (0) 0/173 (0) 0/173 (0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Neubauer et al. [65]</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>IHC</td>
<td>13/87 (14.9) 11/87 (12.6) 2/87 (2.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Fanev et al. [66]</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>IHC</td>
<td>3/50 (6.0) 2/50 (4.0) 1/50 (2.0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HER2, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2; IHC, immunohistochemistry; FISH, fluorescence in situ hybridization; SISH, silver in situ hybridization.

https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2019.11.03
zation after chemotherapy, which presumably affects all chromosomes [68]. Careful evaluation using dual-probe ISH with concomitant IHC review is recommended.

Change in HER2 status with metastatic progression

Change in receptor status during metastatic progression, a phenomenon called “receptor conversion” occurs not only in hormonal receptors, but also in HER2. The reported frequency of HER2 conversion varies a lot between studies, but it is usually observed less often than hormone receptor conversion. Schrijver et al. [69] reported in their meta-analysis that pooled frequency of HER2 positive to negative conversion was 21.3%, and that of negative to positive conversion was 9.5%. Previous studies on HER2 change during metastatic progression are summarized in Table 5 [70-79]. In our study, HER2 receptor status changed in 12 out of 152 cases (7.9%) during metastatic progression: nine cases (5.9%) were negative conversion, and three cases (2.0%) were positive conversion [79].

Similar to HER2 status alteration after NAC, little is known about the true mechanism of HER2 status conversion during metastatic progression. It would be reasonable to postulate intratumoral heterogeneity and selection pressure from treatment play a role in HER2 status conversion. In our study, cases with positive to negative conversion showed significantly lower level of HER2 protein expression and heterogeneous HER2 gene amplification, compared to consistently positive cases [79]. From this observation, it can be inferred that tumors with HER2 heterogeneity have a propensity to show different status in metastatic sites, because HER2-targeted therapy drives susceptible clones to fade away.

HER2 conversion is not a common event, but it is important to discover it because of its relation with treatment. There are some studies which reported response to trastuzumab treatment in patients who gained HER2 positivity in metastatic lesions [77,80]. For this reason, it is now widely recommended to re-evaluate receptor status including HER2 in metastatic lesions, if possible [13,81].

CONCLUSION

The ASCO/CAP guidelines on HER2 interpretation in breast cancer, which were released first in 2007 and subsequently updated in 2013 and 2018, have been changing to provide much clearer instructions for HER2 status designation. The updated 2018 ASCO/CAP guideline focused on three dual-probe ISH groups (groups 2, 3, and 4) with less common ISH patterns, and recommended concomitant IHC review for these ISH groups to achieve the most accurate determination of HER2 status. Finally, in the updated 2018 ASCO/CAP guideline, HER2 status, as determined by ISH, is categorized to positive or negative with no equivocal results.

There are some complicating factors for HER2 interpretation including HER2 heterogeneity, CEP17 copy number gain, and HER2 status alteration after NAC or during metastatic progression. It is important to scan the entire ISH slide and to match it with HER2 IHC to detect HER2 heterogeneity. Separate counting should be performed in both amplified and non-amplified areas. CEP17 copy number gain may lead to an underestimation of HER2 status, but the use of alternative probe is not recommended in the updated 2018 ASCO/CAP guidelines due to the limited evidence on its analytical and clinical validity. HER2 conversion is occasionally found after NAC or during metastasis progression. The change of HER2 status may have an impact on the therapeutic decision and response to treatment. Accordingly, re-evaluation of HER2 status should be performed in post-NAC specimens and metastatic lesions.
ORCID
Soomin Ahn: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-1979-4010
Ji Won Woo: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-1659-7123
Kyoungyul Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-9444-394X
So Yeon Park: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-0299-7268

Author Contributions
Project administration: SA.
Supervision: SYP.
Writing—original draft: SA, JWW, KL, SYP.
Writing—review & editing: SYP.

Conflicts of Interest
S.Y. P. is the editor-in-chief of the Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine and was not involved in the editorial evaluation or decision to publish this article. All remaining authors declare that they have no potential conflicts of interest.

Funding
No funding to declare.

REFERENCES


71. Curtit E, Nerich V, Mansi L, et al. Discordances in estrogen recep-


Meningioma is the most common primary intracranial tumor in adults. The grading of meningioma is based on World Health Organization criteria, which rely on histopathological features alone. This grading system is unable to conclusively predict the clinical behavior of these tumors (i.e., recurrence or prognosis in benign or atypical grades). Advances in molecular techniques over the last decade that include genomic and epigenomic data associated with meningiomas have been used to identify genetic biomarkers that can predict tumor behavior. This review summarizes the molecular characteristics of meningioma using genetic and epigenetic biomarkers. Molecular alterations that can predict meningioma behavior may be integrated into the upcoming World Health Organization grading system.

**Key Words:** Meningioma; Molecular diagnosis; Pathological diagnosis

Meningioma is the most common primary neoplasm of the central nervous system (CNS) in adults [1]. It accounts for one-third (37.1%) of all primary intracranial tumors [1,2] with an incidence rate of 8.33/100,000 person/yr in the United States [2]. Meningiomas primarily occur in the elderly population and are more frequent in the 6th to 7th decades, but are exceedingly rare in childhood (0.4%–4.1% of all pediatric neoplasms) [3]. In adults, females are affected by meningioma more frequently, with a female-to-male ratio [2] of 2.27:1, whereas in childhood it occurs equally [3,4].

The majority of meningiomas (79.8%) are intracranial tumors, and 4.2% of meningiomas have spinal locations [2]. Meningothelial arachnoid cells are the precursors of meningiomas [5] and have different origins in embryogenesis according to their location [5]. The meninges of the brain convexity and skull base are developed from the neural crest and mesodermal structure, respectively [5,6]. This difference affects not only the histologic features but also the recurrent somatic mutations [5,6].

Older age and genetic susceptibility are known risk factors for meningiomas [7], and one important established cause is ionizing radiation [7,8]. As well as with high-dose radiation, therapeutic exposure to low-dose radiation (1–2 Gy), especially in childhood, has been linked to higher meningioma risk [9]. Radiation-induced meningiomas tend to present with multiple tumors and have aggressive clinicopathological features [8,9]. Other possible risk factors may include head trauma, gonadal steroid hormones, smoking, and some viral infections [7,10-13]. Several findings, such as a higher incidence in females and the expression of progesterone receptor in 76% of benign meningiomas, suggest an endocrine influence on the pathogenesis of meningiomas [13,14].

According to the World Health Organization (WHO) classification, most meningiomas (80%) are grade I, which have benign histology and indolent behavior [15]. Whereas the remaining tumors (20%) are a higher grade (grades II and III) with atypical to malignant histology and demonstrate more aggressive courses [2,6].

To date, surgery is the mainstay of treatment and 70%–80% of meningiomas can be cured by surgical resection [6]. The most reliable prognostic factors of meningiomas are histologic grade (WHO grade) and the extent of resection (Simpson grade) [6,16,17]. After complete resection, the 5-year recurrence rates of WHO grade I, II, and III tumors are 5%–10%, 50%, and 80%, respectively [18].

Meningiomas in surgically challenging locations such as the skull base, meningiomas with higher histologic grade and aggres-
sive behavior, and meningiomas that recur despite radical resection, all require another treatment strategy [6]. Radiation therapy has been used as an adjuvant modality, but systemic therapy has demonstrated limited benefits [6].

In the last decade, our understanding of the molecular profile of meningiomas has improved. Identification of genetic and epigenetic alterations in meningiomas enable the clarification of their biologic behavior and prognostic stratification. Comprehensive information on molecular features provides the opportunity of refining the classification of meningiomas that can predict tumor behavior and provide a framework for precisional targeted therapy.

We review the relevant genetic and epigenetic data in meningiomas and highlight associations with clinical features.

**HISTOPATHOLOGICAL CLASSIFICATION OF MENINGIOMAS**

The revised 2016 WHO classification of the CNS categorizes meningiomas into 15 different variants [19]. The heterogeneity of their histopathological features is the most interesting characteristic of meningiomas. The 15 variants are classified into three histologic grades (Fig. 1). The WHO grade I (benign) includes nine variants, and the most frequent are meningothelial, fibrous, and transitional variants. Psammomatous, angiomatous, microcystic, secretory, lymphoplasmacyte-rich, and metaplastic variants are also included in grade I [19]. The WHO grade II and III both include three variants [19]. Atypical, chordoid, and clear cell variants are included in grade II, whereas anaplastic, papillary, and rhabdoid variants are included in grade III [19]. Each variant is diagnosed according to their characteristic histologic morphology. However, many meningiomas show mixed histology in the same tumor, so are diagnosed by the dominant histology. Atypical and anaplastic meningiomas have a set of morphological criteria. Atypical meningiomas are diagnosed either by the presence of 4–19 mitoses per 10 high-power fields (HPF) or by evidence of brain invasion, or by showing at least three of five of the following features: high cellularity, small cells with high nuclear-to-cytoplasmic ratio, sheeting (uninterrupted patternless or sheet-like growth), prominent nucleoli, and spontaneous necrosis [19]. Anaplastic meningiomas are diagnosed either by markedly elevated mitotic activity (≥20 mitoses per 10 HPF) or by overtly malignant morphology such as carcinomatous, sarcomatous, and melanomatous cytology [19].

Although the current histologic grade is valuable in the prognostication of meningiomas, there is still considerable unreliability in predicting clinical behavior and the risk of recurrence and, moreover, determining clinical management. Recently, the revised 2016 WHO classification of the CNS consents to integrated diagnosis, incorporating molecular findings in the diagnosis of some brain tumors, such as gliomas, but not yet meningiomas [20]. The integration of essential molecular profiles in current diagnosis may refine the pathologic classification of meningiomas.

![Fig. 1. Overview of the 2016 World Health Organization classification system for grading meningiomas. HPF, high-power fields; N/C, nuclear/cytoplasmic.](http://jpatholtm.org/https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2019.11.05)
GENETIC ALTERATIONS IN MENINGIOMAS

In the 1970s, the loss of chromosome 22 was first established by a fluorescence technique as a recurrent genetic alteration in meningiomas [21]. Several rare familial syndromes predisposing individuals to meningioma were identified, including neurofibromatosis type 2 (NF2) [22]. In the 1990s, the mutation of the neurofibromin 2 (NF2) gene on chromosome 22 was identified as a major driver, with an incidence of 40%–60% in sporadic meningiomas [23]. Since then, efforts to discover other candidate genes of NF2 wild-type meningiomas have continued, but no critical genetic driver was found until 2013. Powered by the whole-genome sequencing technique, a number of recurrent genetic drivers have been uncovered, such as tumor necrosis factor receptor-associated factor 7 (TRAF7), Kruppel-like factor 4 (KLF4), v-Akt murine thymoma viral oncogene homolog 1 (AKT1), and smoothened frizzled class receptor (SMO) [24,25]. In 2016, the mutation of the phosphatidylinositol-4,5-bisphosphate 3-kinase catalytic subunit alpha (PIK3CA) gene was also identified as a repetitive driver in some meningiomas (Fig. 2) [26].

We first review the genetic status of meningiomas in terms of cytogenetic alterations, followed by germline mutations along with familial syndrome, and then somatic mutations.

Fig. 2. The most common genetic alterations found in meningiomas.

CYTOGENETIC PROGRESSION OF MENINGIOMAS

Cytogenetic studies provide insight into the genetic status of tumors and launch studies for candidate driver genes because a deletion or duplication in a large fraction of chromosome affects a number of genes within these regions. In meningiomas, the loss of chromosome 22 was found early in the cytogenetic era [21] and brought about the identification of NF2 (located on chromosome 22q) as a powerful driver gene [27].

The loss of chromosome 22q is the most common cytogenetic alteration in meningiomas, found in 60%–70% of all meningiomas [28]. The frequency of this alteration increases with tumor grade, with an incidence of 50% and 75%–85%, in benign and atypical or anaplastic meningiomas, respectively [29]. Except for this loss of 22q, benign meningiomas are typically stable at the cytogenetic level [29]. Unusually, angiomatous meningioma harbors multiple polysomies including chromosome 5, 13, and 20, but do not manifest aggressive behavior [30].

In general, the cytogenetic alterations accumulate with increasing tumor grades, therefore atypical and anaplastic meningiomas show complex cytogenetic profiles (Fig. 3) [29,31]. The losses of chromosome 1p, 14q, and 9p are major additional alterations found in higher-grade meningiomas, and the losses of chromosome 6q, 10, and 18q or the gain of 1q, 9q, 12q, 15q, 17q, and 20q are also noted [28,29,32]. The loss of 1p is the second most frequent alteration and related with a higher recurrence rate [33]. The candidate genes on this chromosomal arm include TP73, CDKN2C, RAD54, EPB41, GADD45A, and ALPL [34-37]. Similarly, the loss of 14q is common in higher-grade tumors, resulting in the inactivation of genes located there, such as NDRG family member 2 (NDRG2) and maternally expressed gene 3 (MEG3), and are associated with poor prognosis [38,39]. Codeletion of 1p and 14q is also reported with early recurrence and progression of tumors, suggesting an independent prognostic factor for the WHO grade [40].

The loss of chromosome 9p is strongly associated with malignant progression to anaplastic meningioma, predicting short survival and a worse prognosis [29,33]. This chromosomal arm harbors several important genes regulating cell cycle and apoptosis, such as cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2A (CDKN2A) and cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2B (CDKN2B) [41]. The amplification of 17q is also found in anaplastic meningioma [42]. Interestingly, recurrent and progressive meningiomas exhibit a more frequent loss of 1p, 14q, and 22q than de novo higher-grade tumors.
Although the majority of meningiomas arise sporadically, several rare familial syndromes (Table 1) increase the risk of meningioma development [22,43]. Understanding these syndromes will help the management of patients with familial history, as well as give the basis for further clarification of meningioma tumorigenesis.

**Neurofibromatosis type 2**

NF2 is the most well-known familial syndrome, which is caused by the germline mutation of the NF2 gene on 22q12.2 and characterized by the development of multiple benign tumors in the nervous system, such as vestibular schwannoma and meningioma [44]. Over 50% of individuals in this syndrome manifest at least one meningioma in their lifetime, with a mean age of 30 years [22,45]. The type of mutation corresponds to the risk and severity of meningioma, a truncating mutation by frameshift or nonsense is correlated with a larger tumor burden and an early onset of meningioma rather than a nontruncating mutation by missense or splice-site [45]. Most of the meningiomas in an NF2 disorder background present a fibrous or transitional phenotype and are generally more aggressive than sporadic tumors [43,46].

**Familial syndromes associated with the SWI/SNF complex: SMARCB1 and SMARCE1**

The switch/sucrose nonfermentable (SWI/SNF) chromatin remodeling complex regulates gene expression by nucleosome restructuring and is composed of 10–15 subunits: the ATPase subunits (SMARCA2 or SMARCA4), the conserved core subunits (SMARCB1, SMARCC1, and SMARCC2) and additional complex-specific variant subunits (e.g., SMARCE1) [43]. Genetic aberrations in these subunits are associated with a variety of tumors, and the germline mutations of SMARCB1 and SMARCE1 are found in familial syndrome with risk of meningiomas [47,48].

Germline mutation of the SMARCB1 gene on 22q11.23 causes several hereditary conditions, such as rhabdoid tumor predisposition syndrome (e.g., atypical teratoid/rhabdoid tumor [AT/RT] in CNS) [49], schwannomatosis [50], and Coffin-Siris syndrome [51]. Among these conditions, about 5% of individuals with schwannomatosis develop meningiomas [52], and the remaining two conditions have no significant relation to meningiomas. This is because the type and location of the mutations within the same gene are significantly different from each other, which has an influence on the phenotype of each condition [53]. Schwannomatosis harbors a nontruncating mutation at the beginning or end of the SMARCB1 gene that presents as a benign tumor predisposition syndrome, whereas AT/RT is a highly aggressive malignant tumor in pediatrics and associated with a truncating mutation in the central exons or whole gene [52,53]. Although Coffin-Siris syndrome associated with a nontruncating mutation in exon 8 or 9 is a developmental disorder without the risk of tumors, a point mutation (p.Arg377His) in the SMARCB1 gene was reported as a recurrent somatic mutation in one study [51,54]. SMARCB1 is closely located (6 Mb apart) to NF2 on...
chromosome 22, and co-mutation of these two genes has been described during the tumorigenesis of meningiomas [47]. Germline mutation of \textit{SMARCE1} gene on 17q21.2 was identified in families with multiple spinal meningiomas, and later this mutation was also found in individuals with intracranial meningiomas [48,55]. Almost all \textit{SMARCE1} mutations are truncating with loss of function mutations and present a specific clear cell morphology [55].

\textbf{BAP1 tumor predisposition syndrome}

Germline mutation of the BRCA1-associated protein 1 (\textit{BAP1}) gene on 3p21.1 is a genetic cause of BAP1 tumor predisposition syndrome (BAP1-TPDS), which is susceptible to various neoplasms, including uveal and cutaneous melanomas, pleural and peritoneal mesotheliomas, renal cell carcinoma, and mesothelio-oma [56]. Affected individuals initially present with multiple skin-colored or light red dome-shaped papules, so-called \textit{BAP1}-inactivated nevi/melanocytoma of the skin and develop meningiomas by the time they reach 50 years [57]. Meningiomas in BAP1-TPDS tend to have high-grade rhabdoid morphology and aggressive clinical behavior [56]. \textit{BAP1} encodes a ubiquitin carboxyl-terminal hydrolase 1, which is involved in the regulation of transcription factor chromatin modification as a part of the polycomb repressive complex (PRC), and response to DNA damage by interacting with an important tumor suppressor, BRCA1 [56]. Currently, a BAP1 antibody is available for immunohistochemistry (IHC) and the loss of BAP1 expression on IHC is well correlated with the \textit{BAP1} mutation [56].

\textbf{Gorlin syndrome (Nevoid basal cell carcinoma syndrome): PTCH1 and SUFU}

Several genes in the sonic hedgehog (SHH) signaling pathway are relevant to nevoid basal cell carcinoma syndrome (NBCCS), also known as Gorlin syndrome, affecting multiple organ systems by nontumorous or tumorous conditions [44]. Together with diverse craniofacial and skeletal abnormalities, multiple basal cell carcinomas and medulloblastomas are presented [44]. The SHH pathway plays a critical role in embryonic development, and then it is strictly regulated in adult tissue [58]. Aberrant SHH signaling is reported in various solid cancers [58]. Germline mutations of the human homolog of the Drosophila patched gene (\textit{PTCH1}) on 9p22.32 and suppressor of fusion (\textit{SUFU}) gene on 10q24.32 increase the risk of meningiomas in this syndrome [59,60]. Normally, the \textit{PTCH1} protein maintains this pathway in an inactivated state by retaining SMO. The inactivating germline mutation of \textit{PTCH1} in NBCCS leads to aberrant activation of the SHH pathway, which is responsible for meningioma development [61]. Another germline mutation of the downstream factor, \textit{SUFU}, is also infrequently found in NBCCS with pediatric medulloblastoma. A missense mutation of \textit{SUFU} (p.Arg123Cys) can be found, although rarely, in families with hereditary multiple meningiomas [61].

\textbf{Other familial syndromes}

Other familial syndromes associated with meningiomas include Rubinstein-Taybi syndrome, von Hippel-Lindau syndrome, Cowden disease, Li-Fraumeni syndrome, Gardner syndrome, Multiple endocrine neoplasia type 1, and Werner syndrome (Table 1) [44].

\section*{SOMATIC MUTATIONS IN MENINGIOMAS}

\textbf{NF2-mutated meningiomas}

Genetic alterations of the \textit{NF2} gene on 22q12.2 are found in up to 60% of sporadic meningiomas and identified not only in benign but also in higher-grade tumors, suggesting an initial role of tumorigenesis in meningiomas [28,62]. Around 60% of meningiomas with monosomy 22 also harbor the second allelic mutation in the remaining \textit{NF2} gene, compatible with the two-hit hypothesis of the tumor suppressor gene [28,63]. Truncated or nontruncated proteins are made from the \textit{NF2} mutation [64]. The protein Merlin, encoded by the \textit{NF2} gene, is a member of the protein 4.1 family and keeps the original cell shape by linking membrane proteins to the cytoskeleton [64]. Therefore, \textit{NF2} mutant meningiomas tend to exhibit more of a mesenchymal phenotype, such as fibrous or transitional rather than meningothelial histology [28]. The cells with impaired intercellular adhesion due to defected merlin, lose the inhibitory function on contact-mediated cellular proliferation [64]. Merlin is also involved in several signaling pathways, including Hippo, Notch, and mammalian target of the rapamycin (mTOR), so the loss of this protein results in the dysregulation of cell proliferation, growth, and motility [28,65]. The finding that \textit{NF2}-mutated meningiomas harbor more genetic alterations than the \textit{NF2}-nonmutated tumor, even within the same benign grade, gives the impression that chromosomal instability is increased with the presence of the \textit{NF2} mutation [66].

\textbf{NF2-nonmutated meningiomas}

About 40% of sporadic meningiomas occur in context with no \textit{NF2} mutation, that is, these tumors are driven by other genetic alterations [6]. In the last decade, next-generation sequencing
has elucidated a number of recurrent genetic alterations in NF2-nonmutated meningiomas, typically including TRAF7, KLF4, AKT1, SMO, PIK3CA, and RNA polymerase II subunit A (POLR2A) [22,24,25]. These somatic mutations are usually found in grade I meningiomas and mostly do not coexist with NF2 mutations or monosomy 22 [22]. TRAF7 mutations present alone or co-occur with KLF4, AKT1, or PIK3CA mutations, whereas SMO and POLR2A mutations are usually mutually exclusive (Fig. 2) [22,67]. In addition, the somatic mutation of the telomerase reverse transcriptase (TERT) promoter is revealed as a notable factor in the prognosis of meningiomas [22]. Here we detail the relevant somatic mutations one by one (Table 2).

### TERT mutations

The somatic mutation of the TERT7 gene on 16p13.3 is the most frequent genetic aberration observed in meningiomas without an NF2 mutation and found in 15%–25% of sporadic meningiomas [24]. After the TRAF family was first identified as a signal adaptor of the tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-receptor superfamily, diverse receptor families engaging TRAFs for adaptor molecules have been found [68]. In addition, most TRAFs play a role as E3 ubiquitin ligase, activate downstream signaling pathways, and lead to the activation of mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), nuclear factor-κB, and interferon-regulatory factor [68,69]. TRAF proteins transport various stimuli into the cell and engage in multiple physiologic processes, such as embryonal development, regulation of immunity, and stress response with tissue homeostasis [68]. The role of TRAF proteins in the pathogenesis of multiple diseases has been established, and aberrant TRAF7, the last member of the family, was identified as an

### Table 2. Genes associated with meningiomas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Full name</th>
<th>Locus</th>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NF2</td>
<td>Neurofibromin 2</td>
<td>22q12.2</td>
<td>Merlin</td>
<td>Tumor suppressor&lt;br&gt;Maintain cell shape by linkage cell membrane proteins to cytoskeleton</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAF7</td>
<td>TNF receptor-associated factor 7</td>
<td>16p13.3</td>
<td>TNF receptor-associated factor 7</td>
<td>E3 ubiquitin ligase&lt;br&gt;Interaction with MAPK pathway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KLF4</td>
<td>Kruppel-like factor 4</td>
<td>9p31</td>
<td>Kruppel-like factor 4</td>
<td>Transcription factor&lt;br&gt;Induction of pluripotency&lt;br&gt;Oncogene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AKT1</td>
<td>v-Akt murine thymoma viral oncogene homolog 1</td>
<td>14q32.33</td>
<td>AKT1 kinase&lt;br&gt;(serine/threonine protein kinase)</td>
<td>Transcription factor&lt;br&gt;Regulation of cell growth and division, control apoptosis&lt;br&gt;Activation of hedgehog pathway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMO</td>
<td>Smoothened, frizzled class receptor</td>
<td>7p32.1</td>
<td>Smoothened, G protein-coupled receptor</td>
<td>Cell growth, proliferation&lt;br&gt;Activation of PI3/AKT pathway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIK3CA</td>
<td>Phosphatidylinositol-4,5-bisphosphate 3-kinase catalytic subunit alpha</td>
<td>3q26.32</td>
<td>Catalytic subunit of kinase, PI3K</td>
<td>Cell growth, proliferation&lt;br&gt;Deubiquitination, tumor suppressor&lt;br&gt;Control cell growth, division and cell death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POLR2A</td>
<td>RNA polymerase II subunit A</td>
<td>17p13.1</td>
<td>RNA polymerase II subunit A</td>
<td>Formation of preinitiation complex for transcription&lt;br&gt;Cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase&lt;br&gt;Cellular proliferation and motility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAK</td>
<td>Focal adhesion kinase</td>
<td>8q24.3</td>
<td>Protein tyrosine kinase2</td>
<td>Deubiquitination, tumor suppressor&lt;br&gt;Control cell growth, division and cell death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAP1</td>
<td>BPCA1-associated protein 1</td>
<td>3p21.1</td>
<td>Ubiquitin carboxyl-terminal hydrolase 1</td>
<td>Tumor suppressor&lt;br&gt;Regulate gene activity by chromatin remodeling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMARCB1</td>
<td>SWI/SNF related, matrix associated, actin dependent regulator of chromatin, subfamily b, member 1</td>
<td>22q11.23</td>
<td>Subunit of SWI/SNF complex</td>
<td>Tumor suppressor&lt;br&gt;Regulate gene activity by chromatin remodeling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMARCE1</td>
<td>SWI/SNF related, matrix associated, actin dependent regulator of chromatin, subfamily e, member 1</td>
<td>17q21.2</td>
<td>Subunit of SWI/SNF complex</td>
<td>Tumor suppressor&lt;br&gt;Regulate gene activity by chromatin remodeling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BRAF</td>
<td>V600E, B-Raf proto-oncogene</td>
<td>7q34</td>
<td>Serine/threonine kinase</td>
<td>Oncogene&lt;br&gt;Involved in MAPK pathway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTCH2</td>
<td>Notch receptor 2</td>
<td>1p12</td>
<td>Notch2 (notch receptor family)</td>
<td>Transmembrane receptor&lt;br&gt;Involved in Notch signaling pathway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEK2</td>
<td>Checkpoint kinase 2</td>
<td>22q12.1</td>
<td>Checkpoint kinase 2 (CHK2)</td>
<td>Tumor suppressor&lt;br&gt;Regulate cell division</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTEN</td>
<td>Phosphatase and tensin homolog</td>
<td>10q23.31</td>
<td>Phosphatidylinositol-3,4,5-triphosphate 3-phosphatase</td>
<td>Tumor suppressor&lt;br&gt;Negative regulation of mTOR pathway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDKN2A</td>
<td>Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2A</td>
<td>9p21.3</td>
<td>p16(INK4A)&lt;br&gt;p14(ARF)</td>
<td>Tumor suppressor&lt;br&gt;Cell cycle progression (G1/S phase)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDKN2B</td>
<td>Cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 2B</td>
<td>9p21.3</td>
<td>p15(INK4B)</td>
<td>Tumor suppressor&lt;br&gt;Cell cycle progression (G1/S phase)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMD</td>
<td>Dystrophin</td>
<td>Xp21.1</td>
<td>Dystrophin</td>
<td>Cytoskeletal construction, cell proliferation and motility&lt;br&gt;Maintain telomere end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TERTp</td>
<td>Telomerase reverse transcriptase</td>
<td>5p15.33</td>
<td>Telomerase reverse transcriptase</td>
<td>Maintain telomere end</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
important genetic driver of meningiomas [6]. TRAF7 mutations are mainly confined to exons 13–20, encoding seven WD40 repeats and approximating the domain through which TRAF7 interacts with other factors [24]. TRAF7 mutated meningiomas usually show meningothelial and benign histology, but also present with higher-grade tumors [24]. TRAF7 mutations frequently co-occur with other somatic mutations, including KLF4, AKT1, and PIK3CA mutations, but are mutually exclusive to NF2 or SMO mutations. Depending on what it is a coexisting mutation, it will affect the prognosis of TRAF7 mutant meningioma [24,70]. Interestingly, almost all secretory meningiomas carry mutations in both TRAF7 and KLF4 genes [70].

KLF4 mutations

The KLF4 gene on 9q31 encodes a transcription factor belonging to a large Kruppel-like factor family, which is involved in many physiologic processes including proliferation, apoptosis, development, and pluripotency [71]. It promotes the reprogramming of differentiated adult cells to pluripotent stem cells, which might give a chance to driving tumors [71]. The only recurrent mutation of KLF4 is a missense mutation at codon 409, which is present in the DNA-binding domain [72]. The substitution of lysine to glutamate (p.Lys409Gln) in that site affects the interaction with DNA target sequence and gene expression [72]. About one-fourth of NF2-nonmutated meningiomas harbor a KLF4 mutation, corresponding to 9%–12% of all meningiomas [24]. KLF4 mutations occur frequently with TRAF7 mutation and exclusively with NF2 and AKT1 mutations [24,70]. Nearly all secretory meningiomas have KLF4 and TRAF7 co-mutations [70]. Secretory meningiomas have cytokeratin-positive globules, which is related with the regulatory role of KLF4 to cytokeratin 4 and 19 [72].

AKT1 mutations

AKT1 on 1q43.23.35 encodes the AKT1 kinase (serine/threonine-protein kinase), which regulates cell proliferation, growth, and survival by phosphorylation of downstream factors in the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase (PI3K)/AKT/mTOR signaling pathway [25,73]. The somatic mutation at codon 17 (p.Glu17Lys) causes an overactive AKT1 protein and constitutive activation of this pathway and is then related to uncontrolled cell proliferation [73]. The AKT1 mutation is found in 7%–12% of grade I meningiomas and is rare in grade II or III [24]. More than half of the AKT1 mutated tumors also harbor mutations in TRAF7 but not in NF2, KLF4, and SMO [24,25]. The AKT1-mutant meningiomas present predominantly meningothelial histology, anterior skull base location, and reduced time to recurrence [74]. Moreover, a somatic mutation in AKT1 (p.Glu17Lys) is also found in Proteus syndrome, a rare disorder characterized by overgrowth of the bones, skin, and other tissues, and some of these develop meningiomas [75].

SMO mutations

As with the AKT1 mutation, the SMO mutation results in uncontrolled activation of the SHH signaling pathway, which then leads to the initiation and growth of meningioma [24,25,60]. The SMO gene on 7q32.1 has two mutation hotspots, more frequently p.Leu412Phe and p.Try535Leu mutations occur [76]. SMO mutations are found in 1%–5% of NF2-nonmutated meningiomas and are mutually exclusive to TRAF7 [24,25]. Meningiomas with SMO mutation show meningothelial and grade I histology, and are mainly located in the medial anterior skull base near the midline [24,25,77]. A p.Leu412Phe mutation especially reported in olfactory groove meningioma is associated with larger tumor volume and high risk of recurrence [76].

PIK3CA mutations

PI3K is a member of the PI3K/AKT/mTOR signaling pathway, encoded by the PIK3CA gene [26] on 3q26.32. On mutation, PI3K constitutively phosphorylates downstream factor, AKT, and leads to oncogenic activation of this pathway [26]. PIK3CA mutation is found in 4%–7% of meningiomas, in exclusive fashion with NF2, AKT1, and SMO, but often coexists with the TRAF7 mutation [26]. The PIK3CA mutant meningiomas mostly present meningothelial or transitional histology of WHO grade I and locate at the skull base [26,78]. Out of several identified PIK3CA mutation hotspots, p.His1047Arg and p.Glu545Lys are rarely found in WHO grade II or III, suggesting their association with poor prognosis [78].

POLR2A mutations

The POLR2A gene on 17p13.1 encodes DNA-directed RNA polymerase II subunit A, which is the largest subunit of RNA polymerase II and crucial for the formation of the preinitiation complex [79]. Mutations of the POLR2A gene, mainly p.Glu403Lys or p.Leu438_His439del at exon 7, can affect gene transcription [79]. The POLR2A mutation is found in 6% of meningiomas, exclusively from other mutations [79]. POLR2A mutated meningiomas present meningothelial histology and arise from the tuberculum sellae of the skull base [79]. They are almost all WHO grade I and have a low risk of recurrence [79].
**FAK mutations**

The focal adhesion kinase (FAK) gene on 8q24.3 encodes a cytoplasmic protein tyrosine kinase, which regulates several cell mechanisms involved in cell growth, proliferation, survival, and motility [80,81]. FAK overexpression has been found in several advanced solid cancers and is a potential therapeutic target [80]. Poulilakos et al. [80] reported a relationship between merlin and the FAK pathway in cancer; merlin negatively regulates the phosphorylation of FAK and inhibits the activity of FAK [81]. Uptregulation of FAK is found in some meningiomas and related to a higher grade [82].

**BAP1 mutations**

As mentioned previously, BAP1 mutations were first reported in a distinct subset of rhabdoid meningiomas as a germline mutation in BAP1-TPDS [57,83]. Some BAP1 mutant meningiomas have no germline mutation, indicating that the somatic mutation of BAP1 also occurs [56]. But the difference in the clinical features between germline and somatic mutations is still unknown, in contrast to other BAP1-associated tumors [56]. Germline mutation is more commonly found in BAP1-mutant meningioma [56]. BAP1 mutation is also related to early tumor recurrence [56]. A wide span of BAP1 gene alterations are detected by BAP1 IHC, which may be a useful surrogate marker for the loss of the BAP1 protein, and is important to the risk stratification of meningiomas showing a rhabdoid morphology [56,57,84].

**SMARCB1 and SMARCE1 mutations**

As with the BAP1 gene, the somatic mutations of SMARCB1 and SMARCE1 are also found in a few sporadic meningiomas without an inherited background [54]. Generally, these mutations of subunits in the SWI/SNF complex are more frequently found in higher-grade meningiomas and so present poor prognosis [85]. Again, the loss of SMARCE1 expression in IHC is a specific marker for the diagnosis of clear cell meningiomas. Spinal or cranial clear cell meningiomas present moderately aggressive features with a high risk of recurrence [55,86].

**BRAF V600E mutations**

Somatic mutations of the B-Raf proto-oncogene (BRAF) gene are found in several tumors, including malignant melanoma and papillary thyroid carcinoma [87]. BRAF is located on 7q34 and encodes a serine/threonine kinase of the MAPK pathway, which tightly regulates cell growth and division [87]. The point mutation at codon 600 produces constitutively activated BRAF kinase, that leads to the activation of the downstream pathway and uncontrolled cell proliferation [87]. Two cases of BRAF V600E mutant rhabdoid meningiomas have been reported and one of them, presenting an aggressive clinical course, was improved with BRAF inhibitor (dabrafenib) [88-90]. No other histologic variants of the BRAF V600E mutation were found [88].

**NOTCH2 mutations**

The Notch receptor 2 (NOTCH2) gene on 1p12 encodes a transmembrane protein of the Notch receptor family, which is involved in Notch signaling pathway and has a role in the developmental process [91]. In meningiomas, the overexpression of activated Notch 2 is thought to be associated with tetraploidy and chromosomal instability, but an accurate mechanism has not yet been found [91].

**CHEK2 mutations**

The mutation of the checkpoint kinase 2 (CHEK2) gene on 22q12.1 is associated with chromosomal instability in meningiomas [92]. CHEK2 encodes checkpoint kinase 2, which is activated when DNA is damaged. Consequently, it is involved in cell cycle arrest, DNA damage repair, or apoptosis, interacting with other proteins, such as tumor protein 53 (p53). Therefore, the loss of function in this protein leads to the development of tumors [92]. The codeletion of the NF2 gene on the same chromosomal band 22q12 is frequently reported and it is associated with a more aggressive behavior [92].

**PTEN mutations**

Somatic mutation of the phosphatase and tensin homolog (PTEN) gene on 10q23.31 is one of the most common genetic alterations in numerous tumors, including prostate cancer, endometrial cancer, and gliomas [93,94]. PTEN encodes a phosphatidylinositol-3,4,5-triphosphate 3-phosphatase, which negatively regulates the PI3K/AKT/mTOR pathway [94]. A loss of function mutation in PTEN is responsible for the progression to high-grade meningiomas [95].

**CDKN2A and CDKN2B mutations**

The CDKN2A gene on 9p21.3 encodes the tumor suppressor proteins, p16(INK4A) and p14(ARF) [35]. The p16(INK4A) protein binds to cyclin-dependent kinase 4 (CDK4) and cyclin-dependent kinase 6 (CDK6), preventing cell cycle progression and cell division. The p14(ARF) protein also controls cell cycle progression in the G1 phase, protecting the p53 protein from degradation [35]. The CDKN2B gene on 9p21.3 encodes the tumor suppressor, p15(INK4B), which also binds CDK4 or
CDK6, preventing cell cycle progression [35]. Mutation or deletion of the chromosomal band harboring CDKN2A and CDKN2B is frequently found in a wide range of tumors [35]. In meningioma, these alterations are usually related to anaplastic histology and poor outcome [41].

**DMD mutations**

Recently, the dystrophin (DMD) gene on Xp21.2–p21.1 has been suggested as a potential prognostic gene and is originally known for its germline mutation in Duchenne muscular dystrophy [96]. DMD encodes dystrophin, a large protein regulating cytoskeletal construction, cell proliferation, and motility [96]. In addition to a typical myogenic function, a role as an oncogenic gene in tumors originating from the neural crest and mesoderm is indicated [96]. An inactivating mutation of DMD is identified in progressive and higher-grade meningiomas and responsible for poor prognosis [96]. The location on the X chromosome partly supports the fact that aggressive meningiomas are common in males, in contrast to the female predominance of benign tumors [96]. DMD mutation is a mutually independent prognostic factor with TERT promoter alteration [96].

**TERT promoter mutations**

The TERT gene on 5p15.33 encodes a catalytic subunit of the telomerase complex, maintaining telomeres by adding small DNA repeats (TTAGGG) to the end of the chromosome [97]. In most somatic cells, expression of the telomerase complex is repressed, so the telomere is continuously shortened and finally leads to apoptosis [97]. The somatic mutation of the promoter region of the TERT gene, at hotspot C228T or C250T, increases the number of transcription factor binding sites [98]. This upregulates the expression of TERT and results in the constant survival of tumor cells [97]. In several cancers, such as glioma, melanoma, and bladder cancer, the presence of a TERT promoter mutation is usually associated with aggressive behavior and poor survival [99]. Similarly, in meningiomas, the TERT promoter mutation definitely affects the prognosis [100]. The TERT promoter mutation is more frequently identified in higher grades, 1.7%, 5.7%, and 20% in WHO grade I, II, and III, respectively, and related with the time to progression [100,101]. The median time to progression is 10.1 months versus 179 months in individuals with or without the TERT promoter mutation [100]. In addition, this mutation is mainly found in secondary atypical meningioma progressed from benign tumor rather than de novo atypical meningioma, therefore if it is identified in grade I meningioma, it implicates a high recurrence rate and malignant transformation [100,101].

**EPIGENETIC ALTERATIONS IN MENINGIOMAS**

Abnormal gene expression is crucial for cancer development and is induced primarily by genetic alterations [7]. However, epigenetic alterations that regulate gene expression without changing the DNA sequence are also responsible for the development of cancer [7]. Recently, evidence that epigenetic alterations have a pivotal role in the tumorigenesis and progression of meningiomas has accumulated [7,102]. In addition, it has been suggested that the status of global DNA methylation more accurately reflects tumor behavior and predicts tumor recurrence compared with WHO and Simpson grades [103-105]. Here we summarize the epigenetic alterations of meningiomas, including aberrant DNA methylation, alteration of chromatin remodeling, and abnormal expression of microRNAs (Table 3).

**Aberrant DNA methylation**

DNA methylation in CpG islands is a well-known epigenetic regulation of gene transcription [106]. Both focal DNA hypermethylation and global DNA methylation profiles have an effect on tumorigenesis [107]. The reliable single genes that are silenced by focal DNA hypermethylation without inactivating mutations in meningiomas include tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase 3 (TIMP3), tumor protein p73 (TP73), MEG3, glutathione S-transferase Pi 1 (GSTM1), homeobox (HOX) family, WNK lysine deficient kinase 2 (WNK2), and MAL protelipid protein 2 (MAL2). Hypermethylation of TIMP3 gene on the 22q12.3, inhibits matrix metalloproteinases and results in downregulation of transcription and is associated with higher grades and aggressive behavior [106,108]. Nearly all TIMP3-hypermethylated meningiomas have an allelic loss of 22q [108,109]. Another tumor suppressor gene inactivated by epigenetic hypermethylation is TP73 on 1p36.32, which is found in higher grades, frequently with allelic loss of 1p, and associated with malignant transformation [110]. MEG3 on 14q32.2 encodes an imprinted long noncoding RNA, suppressing tumor cell growth and interacting with the tumor suppressor p53 [111]. MEG3 RNA is considerably expressed in normal arachnoid cells, whereas it is not expressed in meningioma as a consequence of deletion or hypermethylation [39]. The silencing of the MEG3 gene via promoter methylation is more commonly found in higher grades [39]. Hypermethylation of the GSTP1 gene on 11q13.2 is also more frequently found in higher grades [106]. Concordant hypermethylation of HOX genes on 7p15.2, such as HOXA5,
HOXA6, HOXA9, and HOXA11, induces silencing and down-regulation of target tumor suppressors [112]. The WNK2 gene on 9q22.31 has an inhibitory function on the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) signaling pathway, and the aberrant hypermethylation of this gene results in tumor cell proliferation by relieving inhibition [7,113]. The MAL2 gene on 8q24.12 encodes a transmembrane protein required for the intracellular transport of macromolecules and transcytosis [114]. Hypermethylation of its promoter region and consequent gene silencing are found in higher grade meningiomas [102,114].

Powered by the development of molecular techniques, genome-wide methylation profiles are actively investigated in cancer biology. Emerging evidence indicates that global DNA methylation profiles may more precisely predict tumor recurrence and behaviors, and are more useful for the molecular classification of meningiomas [15]. In 2017, the first pivotal study was published by Olar et al. [103] As a result of profiling 140 cases of meningiomas, they recognized two distinct methylation subgroups of meningiomas, naming the prognostically favorable (MM-FAV) and unfavorable (MM-UNFAV) subgroups [103]. They defined a baseline meningioma methylation classifier, which is composed of 238 probes corresponding to hypermethylated CpG loci located on 157 gene lesions [103]. MM-FAV and MM-UNFAV groups show 98 CpG loci for 52 genes and 105 CpG loci for 105 genes, respectively [103]. After further optimization adapting existing prognostic factors, such as WHO and Simpson grades, they derived a 64 CpG loci of meningioma methylation predictor from 238 probes [103]. Each group shows a notably different risk of recurrence [103]. In the same year, Sahm et al. [104] identified two major epigenetic groups, group A and group B, by profiling genome-wide DNA methylation patterns from 497 cases of meningiomas. They further classified the groups into six subgroups, designated into methylation classes (MC), which are associated with distinct patterns of histology, cyrogenetic alteration,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 3. Epigenetic changes in meningiomas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Affected gene</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Focal DNA methylation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIMP3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEG3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GSTP1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HOX45, 6, 9, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WNK2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAL2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Histone modification</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H3K27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIST1HIIC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KDM6C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KDM6A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chromatin remodeler</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMARC21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SMARCE1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>microRNA</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miR-21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miR-190a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miR-335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miR-29c-3p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miR-219-5p</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miR-145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miR-200a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miR-224</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| http://jpatholtm.org/ | https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2019.11.05 |  |  |
and mutation \[104\]. Group A is subdivided into four MC, MC benign 1, 2, 3, and MC intermediate A \[104\]. Group B is subdivided into two MC, MC intermediate B and MC malignant \[104\]. They demonstrate that the MCs are well correlated with histologic variant, cytogenetic alteration, and major mutations, and propose that a DNA methylation-based classification system can give a more accurate prognostication of clinical outcomes, such as progression-free survival \[104\]. Interestingly, they analyzed the potential of this system within the same WHO grade. WHO grade I with MC intermediate had a worse clinical outcome than the average outcome of WHO grade I \[104\]. Likewise, WHO grade II with MC benign showed a better clinical course than the average of WHO grade II \[104\]. Accordingly, this system may more accurately define individuals with a higher risk of progression in WHO grade I tumor and individuals with lower risk of progression in WHO grade II, and therefore assist in the precise decision making \[104\]. More recently, Nassiri et al. \[105\] announced a DNA methylation-based model for predicting the risk of early 5-year recurrence of meningiomas. They then combined the validated methylene predictor with existing prognostic factors (WHO and Simpson grades) and developed a nomogram calculating a 5-year meningioma recurrence score \[105\]. It is expected that the meningioma recurrence score will provide information about more personalized clinical outcomes and guidelines for clinical decision making \[105\].

**Aberration of chromatin remodeling**

Chromatin remodeling is an important epigenetic regulation of gene expression. It governs the accessibility of the target gene DNA by changing the chromatin structure and exposing or hiding the target region \[115\]. It is mainly carried out by covalent modification of histone and ATP-dependent regulation of chromatin remodelers \[115,116\]. Aberration of this chromatin remodeling results in loss of transcriptional regulation of downstream genes and can cause the growth and progression of tumors \[115,116\]. Deregulation of histone modification and mutations in the members of remodeling complexes are reported in meningiomas \[107\].

**Histone modification**

The abnormal modification of histones is reported in many diseases including cancers, although the detailed mechanisms are unclear \[117\]. Histone proteins not only condense chromatin to form nucleosomes but also participate in the regulation of gene expression through posttranslational modification by methylation, acetylation, phosphorylation, and ubiquitination \[118\]. It is suggested that modified histones can recruit other proteins, then open or close the chromatin \[118\]. Among histone members (H2A, H2B, H3, and H4), trimethylation of lysine 27 of histone H3 (H3K27me3) has an important role in the target gene silencing and tumorigenesis of several cancers \[115\]. Katz et al. \[119\] reported that meningiomas with the loss of H3K27me3 present more rapid progression and are well correlated with a previously designated DNA-methylation based classification scheme. They suggest that IHC for trimethylation of H3K27 might be useful for the assessment of prognosis particularly in WHO grade II \[119\]. On the other hand, molecular profiling studies reported mutations of genes associated with histones \[120\]. An overexpression of the histone cluster H1 family member C (HIST1H1C) gene on 6p22.2 is more frequently found in recurrent meningiomas \[120\]. It encodes histone H1.2 protein, which interacts with linker DNA and condenses chromatin structure more tightly \[120\]. It is believed that the H1.2 protein may be engaged in epigenetic regulation of target gene expression by preserving the specific patterns of DNA methylation \[120\]. In addition, loss of function mutations of KDM5C (on Xp11.22) and KDM6A (on Xp11.3), encoding histone lysine-specific demethylases, affect the function of histones and are also involved in epigenetic regulation in meningiomas \[118\].

**SWI/SNF chromatin remodeler**

For the precise expression of genes at the correct time, transcription machinery recruits chromatin remodelers into the chromatin region, where they reconstruct and reposition nucleosome using energy from ATP to obtain a nucleosome-free region for gene expression \[115\]. The SWI/SNF complex (also known as the BAF complex) is well-known as a chromatin remodeler, and genetic alterations involving various subunits constituting this multimeric complex are found in up to 20% of human neoplasms \[121\]. It is believed that inactivating mutations of SWI/SNF subunits cause the redistribution of the complex from promoter and enhancer (involved in differentiation) to super-enhancer (involved in self-renewal, proliferation, and survival) and this imbalance results in tumorigenesis \[121\]. As previously mentioned, mutations of two core subunits of the SWI/SNF complex, SMARCB1 and SMARCE1, are identified in meningiomas \[107,121\]. In addition, PRC2, which antagonizes the SWI/SNF complex, is upregulated in high-grade meningioma, therefore loss of function mutations in the SWI/SNF complex plays a critical role in the epigenetic regulation of chromatin in meningioma pathogenesis \[122\].
MicroRNA expression

MicroRNAs (miRNAs) are important epigenetic mechanisms, which are involved in various physiologic and pathologic processes [123]. MiRNAs are small noncoding RNAs of about 22 nucleotides [107] and regulate the translation of target mRNA by inducing cleavage or degradation of the target mRNA strand and therefore inhibiting translation into proteins [124]. Recently, the role of miRNAs in cancer biology has been actively investigated and considerable genes encoding miRNAs are found in mutational hotspots of tumors or at fragile chromosomal sites [124,125]. Dysregulated miRNA may have either oncogenic or tumor-suppressing functions [124]. Although the miRNA profile of meningiomas has not been so actively studied, an accumulation of evidence implicates the role of miRNAs in the initiation, progression, and recurrence of meningiomas [123]. For example, downregulation of miR-200a and upregulation of β-catenin are found in meningiomas [7,118]. Because miR-200a targets the mRNA of β-catenin, abnormal low expression of miR-200a causes the overexpression of β-catenin and consequently activates the Wnt signaling pathway in meningiomas [118]. Low levels of miR-200a are also associated with the downregulation of E-cadherin via repression of transcription factors, ZEB1 and SIP1 [118]. Accordingly, miR-200a may act as a multifunctional tumor suppressor and the downregulation of miR-200a may promote the development of meningiomas [118,126]. Another study to find candidate miRNA in higher-grade tumors, reported that the downregulation of miRNA-145 is found in higher-grade meningiomas, which is indirectly associated with the overexpression of the COL5A1 gene (encoding collagen type V alpha) and migratory or invasive potential of meningioma cells [118,127]. In addition, a higher expression of miR-21 is found in WHO grade II or III meningioma than in WHO grade I [7,107]. Upregulation of miR-190a and downregulation of miR-29c-3p and miR-219-5p are associated with a significantly high rate of recurrence [7,125]. Overexpression of miR-335 is found in meningiomas and has an effect on tumor cell proliferation, which is associated with the retinoblastoma protein (RB) signaling pathway [7]. MiR-224 is related to the malignant progression of meningiomas and may indicate the prognosis for overall or recurrence free survival [107].

ABERRANT SIGNALING PATHWAYS IN MENINGIOMAS

Most of the genetic alterations impact one or more signaling pathway associated with tumorigenesis and the progression of meningiomas (Fig. 4) [128]. The understanding of aberrant signaling pathways and relevant molecules could provide the basis for the development of corresponding target agents.

mTOR pathway

The aberrant activation of the mTOR pathway has been known to be frequently associated with various human cancers [129]. The key molecule of this pathway, mTOR is a serine/threonine kinase, that constitutes two distinct complexes, mTOR complex 1 (mTORC1) and mTOR complex 2 (mTORC2) [130,131]. Several upstream signaling molecules have an influence on the mTOR signaling pathway, which regulates cell growth, proliferation, survival, and metabolism [131]. Merlin is related to the inhibition of cell proliferation through several pathways, and it is believed that merlin negatively regulates mTORC1 and positively regulates mTORC2 [132]. Consequently, loss of merlin by NF2 mutation causes aberrant overexpression of mTOR and results in the development of meningioma [132]. Another upstream signaling pathway related to mTOR is the PI3K/AKT pathway [129,131]. PI3K phosphorylates and activates AKT, which is an activator of mTORC1 and a substrate for mTORC2 [130]. So activating mutations of PIK3CA and AKT lead to the aberrant activation of the downstream oncogenic mTOR pathway and are found in up to 10% of meningiomas. In addition, PTEN negatively regulates PI3K function, therefore loss of PTEN is also connected to aberrant mTOR activation [130].

http://jpatholtm.org/ https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2019.11.05
Genetic alterations corresponding to the signaling molecules, merlin (NF2), PI3K, AKT, and PTEN, are all identified in a subset of meningiomas [107].

**SHH pathway**

The SHH signaling pathway is essential for embryonic development [133]. In adults, it is involved and strictly regulated in several key cellular processes, including cell growth, proliferation, stem cell homeostasis, and angiogenesis [107,133]. The SHH ligand binds to the transmembrane receptor, PTCH1, and allows it to relieve its inhibition of SMO [134]. Freely released and activated SMO promotes the translocation of GLI transcription factors in the nucleus and results in the activation of the target gene [128,133]. Genetic alterations of PTCH1 and SMO cause abnormal activation of this pathway and are associated with meningioma tumorigenesis [134]. SUFU is known as a negative regulator of the SHH pathway, and its germline mutation is also reported in meningiomas [107].

**Wnt pathway**

The loss of E-cadherin expression is found in about 30% of meningiomas and is more frequently found in clinically aggressive and invasive meningiomas [135]. In addition, overexpression and translocation of β-catenin into the nucleus is also found in higher-grade meningiomas [135]. These suggest that Wnt signaling pathway has an important role in the tumorigenesis and progression of meningiomas. One of the receptors of this pathway, frizzled class receptor 2 (FZD2), is highly expressed in meningiomas, which is associated with the activation of the Wnt pathway, overexpression and translocation of cytosolic β-catenin, and the resultant upregulation of oncogenic proteins, such as c-myc and cyclin D1 [107,128,136]. Genetic aberration of genes encoding key molecules of the Wnt pathway, such as adenomatous polyposis coli (APC), E-cadherin (CDH1), and axis inhibition protein (AXIN), are also reported in meningiomas [107,128].

**Notch pathway**

The Notch signaling pathway is highly conserved and plays an important role in embryonic development by proliferative signaling transduction through four transmembrane receptors, Notch1-4 [137]. When the jagged ligand binds to a Notch receptor, the cleaved intracellular portion of the Notch receptor is translocated into the nucleus and promotes the expression of a transcription factor, hairy and enhancer of split 1 (HES1) [128,135]. HES1 overexpression is found in all grades of meningiomas and is associated with the upregulation of jagged ligand, Notch1, and Notch2 [135]. In contrast, two corepressors modulating HES1 activity, transducin-like enhancer of split 2 (TLE2) and TLE3, are notably upregulated in higher-grade meningiomas [128,135]. As described above, dysregulation of this pathway is associated with tetraploidy and chromosomal instability [137].

**Growth factor receptor pathway**

Growth factor receptors associated with tumor growth, angiogenesis, and tumor cell migration are implicated for meningioma tumorigenesis, including EGFR, platelet-derived growth factor receptor β (PDGFRβ), vascular endothelial growth factor receptor, and insulin-like growth factor receptor [128,137]. EGFR and PDGFR usually transduce the mitogenic signal via the MAPK signaling pathway, which is reported to be aberrantly activated in meningiomas [135].

**RB and p53 pathway**

The RB protein regulates the cell cycle progression at the G1/S phase checkpoint by inhibiting the E2F transcription factor [128]. When the mitogenic signal combines cyclin D with either CDK4 or CDK6, it causes phosphorylation of RB and releases the active E2F transcriptional factor, leading to expression of genes associated with the transition from G1 to S phase [128]. The p53 pathway functions as a negative regulator of the RB pathway, so induces the arrest of the cell cycle, repair of damaged DNA, and apoptosis [128,135]. p16(INK4a) and p15 (INK4b) prevent cell cycle progression by inhibiting the CDK4/cyclinD complex, and p14(ARF) connects the two RB and p53 pathways [135]. In fact, genetic alterations of genes encoding these proteins are found in higher-grade meningiomas [128].

**Clinicopathological Features Associated with Genetic Alteration in Meningiomas**

The difference in the embryonic origins of the meninges according to site is associated with the frequent histology, location, and recurrent mutations of meningiomas [138]. Meninges of the skull base originate from mesoderm, whereas meninges of the convexity originate from the neural crest [5]. Meningothelial variants are more frequently found in the skull base, whereas fibrous meningiomas mainly develop in the convexity [5,6]. Moreover, genetic alterations of the NF2 gene are preferentially found in the convexity and most other genetic alterations except NF2 are mainly found in skull base tumors (Table 4). The tumor site
may also be related to the histologic grade, as the proportion of grade II and III tumors are much higher at the convexity than at the skull base, where grade I meningiomas are more common [6].

AKT1-mutant meningiomas tend to present meningothelial histology and anterior skull base localization, which are associated with early tumor recurrence [74]. SMO-mutant meningiomas also prefer the meningothelial variant at the anterior skull base and olfactory groove region, which tend to have larger tumor volume and higher recurrence rate [76]. Nearly all secretory meningiomas harbor KLF4 mutations with or without TRAF7 mutations but TRAF7 mutations are also recurrent in other histologic variants, mainly the meningothelial variant [70]. POLR2A-mutant meningiomas are mainly located at the tuberculum sellae of the skull base and present meningothelial histology [79]. PIK3CA-mutant meningiomas are also located at the skull base and present meningothelial or transitional histology [26,78]. Two types of PIK3CA mutations, p.His1047Arg and p.Glu545Lys, are more frequently found in higher-grade tumors, which may be associated with poor prognosis [78]. Interestingly, mutation of SMARCE1 is linked to clear cell histology in spinal cord meningiomas [55]. As previously stated, mutations of the TERT promoter obviously has an influence on the prognosis of meningiomas, which is definitely associated with malignant histological progression and time to progression [100]. BAP1 mutations specific for rhabdoid meningioma [56], TP53 mutations, loss of CDKN2A and CDKN2B, and epigenetic inactivation of TIMP3 are all implicated in higher-grade histology and poor clinical outcome [41,106,108]. The deletion of 1p is also associated with the progression of meningiomas [33]. In contrast, genetic alterations of TRAF7, SMO, KLF4, POLR2A, and PIK3CA (except the above two types) are believed to be associated with a relatively low risk of malignant progression and recurrence.

## CONCLUSION

The WHO grade and extent of resection are still the most important prognostic factors for meningioma. However, WHO classification does not always predict tumor recurrence or transformation to a higher grade. The molecular characteristics of meningiomas offer profound implications for pathologic classification and allow for the molecular subtyping of meningioma. Furthermore, the discovery of genetic and epigenetic biomarkers of meningioma may assist in the individualized management of precision medicine.

## ORCID

Young Suk Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4794-639X
Youn Soo Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-1653-6315

## Author Contributions

Conceptualization: Youn Soo Lee, Young Suk Lee.
Data curation: Youn Soo Lee, Young Suk Lee.
Investigation: Youn Soo Lee, Young Suk Lee.
Methodology: Youn Soo Lee.
Supervision: Youn Soo Lee.
Writing—original draft: Youn Soo Lee, Young Suk Lee.
Writing—review & editing: Youn Soo Lee, Young Suk Lee.

## Conflicts of Interest

The authors declare that they have no potential conflicts of interest.
**Funding**

No funding to declare.

**REFERENCES**

64. Pečina-Šlaus N. Merlin, the NF2 gene product. Pathol Oncol Res 2010; 16: 4155-64.
84. Mordechai O, Postovsky S, Vlodavsky E, et al. Metastatic rhab-


129. Porta C, Paglino C, Mosca A. Targeting PI3K/Akt/mTOR signaling in cancer. Front Oncol 2014; 4: 64.
Ultrasound (US)-guided fine-needle aspiration (FNA) is a cost-effective and safe tool for the assessment of thyroid nodules and has been used as a standard diagnostic modality for the management of thyroid nodules [1,2]. In the 1980s, FNA became the standard diagnostic tool for thyroid nodules, replacing large-needle biopsy because of its high diagnostic accuracy and low complication rate [3]. The main clinical role of FNA is to rule out malignant tumors requiring surgery. The use of FNA has reduced the number of unnecessary surgeries in patients with thyroid nodules. Although FNA is associated with high diagnostic accuracy and safety, it has several limitations due to a substantial rate (approximately 22.4%) of inconclusive results including non-diagnostic or atypia of undetermined significance (AUS)/follicular lesion of undetermined significance (FLUS) [4]. The non-diagnostic rate in initial FNA is about 10% and an even higher rate of up to 50% in repeat FNA [5,6]. The rate of AUS/FLUS is about 10%–20% with higher rates of inconclusive results in repeat FNA [7-10]. FNA also shows a relatively low diagnostic accuracy for follicular lesions [11,12]. These limitations associated with FNA lead to repeated FNA or unnecessary
surgeries. Therefore, additional diagnostic tools for thyroid nodules are desirable to overcome the limitations of FNA for thyroid nodule assessment.

Advances in core needle biopsy (CNB) have led to the use of spring-activated single- or double-action needles in thyroid nodule diagnosis. In addition, widespread use of high-resolution US enables accurate diagnosis and minimization of complications associated with CNB in head and neck lesions [13]. CNB is safe, well-tolerated, and associated with a low incidence of complications when performed by an expert [1,14]. Several large-scale studies [15,16] and a systematic review and meta-analysis [17] validated the low rates of major and minor complications and absence of procedure-related deaths.

CNB has the potential to overcome the limitations of FNA by obtaining a large tissue sample, which reduces non-diagnostic results due to paucity of follicular cells and provides further information related to histological architecture underlying the capsule. Previous studies [18-21] reported that CNB yielded a lower rate of inconclusive results, including non-diagnostic or AUS/FLUS results compared with repeated FNA in the assessment of nodules with prior inconclusive results. Recently, several studies also reported the potential role of CNB as a first-line diagnostic tool for the management of thyroid nodules [22-25].

Together with thyroid FNA and CNB, a multidisciplinary approach for patients with a thyroid nodule is essential to improve the quality of life and achieve a better outcome. Standardized guidelines are needed to ensure the optimal management of patients with thyroid nodules. The terminology for reporting thyroid FNA cytology worldwide is based on the Bethesda System for Reporting Thyroid Cytopathology (TBSRTC), which was introduced in 2007. The second edition of TBSRTC was released in 2017 [26]. The Korean Society of Thyroid Radiology (KSThR) published ‘Core needle biopsy of thyroid nodules: consensus statement and recommendations’ in 2013 [27]. The Korean Endocrine Pathology Thyroid CNB Study Group published an initial proposal of ‘Pathology Reporting of Thyroid Core Needle Biopsy’ in 2015 [28]. In 2017, the KSThR published ‘Core Needle Biopsy of the Thyroid: 2016 Consensus Statement and Recommendations from the Korean Society of Thyroid Radiology’ [14]. The fourth edition of the World Health Organization (WHO) classification of endocrine tumors was released in 2017 [29]. The 2017 revisions of TBSRTC and the WHO classification in thyroid cytology and histopathology encompass molecular diagnostics and new diagnostic entities of borderline thyroid tumors such as noninvasive follicular thyroid neoplasm with papillary-like nuclear features (NIFTP).

Along with recent advances in the diagnostic classification and management guidelines of thyroid nodules, the Practice Guideline Committee of the Korean Thyroid Association (KTA) organized a taskforce for the development of practical guidelines of CNB for the diagnosis and management of thyroid nodules. This guideline includes the indications, patient preparation, biopsy technique, complications, specimen preparation, and pathology reporting.

METHODS

A search of the PubMed, MEDLINE, and EMBASE databases was performed to retrieve publications on thyroid CNB from 1995 to September 2019 using the following keywords: (thyroid nodule OR thyroid cancer OR thyroid carcinoma OR thyroid malignancy OR thyroid neoplasm OR thyroid diagnosis) and (core needle biopsy OR core-needle biopsy OR core biopsy OR gun biopsy OR CNB). Since clinical controversies related to issues exist in many of the areas, the recommendations regarding some of the issues are based on expert opinion. This limitation needs to be overcome in the near future when new elements of evidence are accumulated. Because there is little high-level evidence, recommendations regarding some of the issues are based on expert opinion. This limitation needs to be addressed in the future based on further studies. The goal of this guideline is to provide the best scientific evidence available and a consensus expert opinion regarding the clinical use of CNB in thyroid nodules.

INDICATIONS FOR CORE NEEDLE BIOPSY

The indications for CNB have yet to be clearly defined. Most thyroid guidelines recommend FNA as a first-line biopsy for thyroid nodule assessment; therefore, CNB is regarded as a complementary tool [14,30-32]. Recently, KSThR published the CNB Guideline in 2017 [14]. KSThR suggested several indications and the possible use of CNB for thyroid nodules with non-diagnostic or indeterminate FNA results. The National Cancer Institute (NCI) suggested that CNB under US guidance utilizing modern needles may be advantageous in cases rendered “unsatisfactory” by FNA [32]. In addition, the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists (AACE)/American College of Endocrinology (ACE)/Associazione Medici Endocrinologi (AME), British Thyroid Association (BTA), and KSThR suggested the use of CNB for malignant thyroid tumors such as lymphoma, anaplastic cancer, medullary cancer, and metastasis [14,30,33]. However, the American Thyroid Association (ATA)
did not recommend the use of CNB for thyroid tumors [31]. A meta-analysis showed that the non-diagnostic and inconclusive rates of CNB were 5.5% (95% confidence interval [CI], 2.2% to 8.7%) and 8.0% (95% CI, 4.4% to 11.5%), respectively, whereas the non-diagnostic and inconclusive rates of FNA were 22.6% (95% CI, 12.2% to 33.0%) and 40.2% (95% CI, 25.1% to 55.3%), respectively [34-36]. In another meta-analysis focusing on initially non-diagnostic FNA results, the non-diagnostic rate (6.4%; 95% CI, 3.3% to 16.1%) of follow-up CNB was significantly lower than that of repeated FNA (36.5%; 95% CI, 29.9% to 43.1%) [35,36]. In large cohort CNB studies, the false-negative rate of CNB ranged from 1% to 3% [35,37-39]. Recently, several studies suggested the initial use of CNB, but it is still disputed [23,37,38,40].

Based on current evidence, CNB has been suggested as the next diagnostic method for previously non-diagnostic FNA results [18,19,41,42], previous AUS/FLUS [18,43-45], and clinically suspected rare thyroid malignancies [13,46-49].

**PREPARING PATIENTS FOR CORE NEEDLE BIOPSY**

First, informed consent should be obtained and should include the information needed for the CNB procedure and possible complications [14]. The side effects associated with the use of drugs (i.e. bleeding tendency with drugs such as warfarin, heparin, aspirin, or clopidogrel bisulfate) should be evaluated, however, a screening blood test for coagulation is usually unnecessary. The KSThR guideline recommends withdrawal of aspirin and clopidogrel bisulfate for 7–10 days, warfarin for 3–5 days, and heparin for 4–6 hours before CNB [14]. Initiation of aspirin and clopidogrel bisulfate after CNB is recommended from the next day followed by warfarin at night, and heparin 2 hours later [14,50]. Considering the clinical significance of anticoagulant therapy, the withdrawal of anticoagulant should be carefully discussed with the prescribing physician. Warfarin can be transiently changed to shorter-acting heparin [14,50]. Fasting is usually not recommended for CNB in most patients [14].

**PLANNING THE CORE NEEDLE BIOPSY PROCEDURE**

Before the procedure, the nodule characteristics, size, location, and vascularity should be evaluated on gray-scale US and color Doppler US. Careful monitoring of vascularity with color Doppler US can minimize bleeding during CNB [14]. The CNB approach route is decided based on the information obtained from the pre-procedural US. Among the four approach routes available including transisthmic, lateral, longitudinal, and oblique [14], the trans-isthmic approach is considered the most suitable. The nodule size and location are important factors in deciding the size of specimen notch [14,18,39]. To improve the safety and diagnostic accuracy, CNB should be performed by experienced operators under US guidance [14].

**PREPARATION OF CORE BIOPSY EQUIPMENT**

Before 2000, large-bore needles (14-gauge) had been used for large-needle biopsy [14,51]. Recent CNB devices are characterized by small bore (usually 18–21 gauge) and spring activation [14,18,51-53].

The KSThR recommends appropriate CNB needle conditions for thyroid nodules [14]. First, a short needle length (less than 10 cm) is recommended since thyroid gland is a superficial organ. Second, needle bore determines the thickness of the specimen. The thinner the needle, the less damage to normal tissue but the lower is the amount of tissue obtained [14]. Some studies report the use of 16–22 gauge needles [18,41,53-55]. Although the use of 18–21 gauge needles is universal for thyroid nodules, 18-gauge needles have been mainly used in Korea [14,18,43,56-58]. Finally, the stylet length or the penetration length can be selected according to the nodule size. Thickness of core needle is another issue. Ahn et al. [59] reported that CNB with an 18-gauge needle is more effective for the diagnosis of thyroid nodules than CNB with a 20-gauge needle. However, there is insufficient evidence supporting the relationship between needle thickness and complication rate or diagnostic accuracy.

CNB needles are composed of two needles, the stylet and the cutting cannula [14,18,52]. The stylet (inner needle) carries an approximately 2-mm-long tip with a sharp slope to penetrate tissue and a specimen notch to hold the sampled tissue. The cutting cannula (outer needle) is the outer component for cutting the tissue [14].

Core biopsy devices are divided into automated and semi-automated types according to the mechanism of action [14]. The automated needle is known as the double-action device because both inner and outer needles are activated by spring action. This type of needle fires the inner needle by the action of a spring that can more easily penetrate hard fibrotic or calcified tissue. However, it may be more prone to tissue or vessel damage. The semi-automated needle is known as a single-action needle because the spring activates only once: the inner needle is manually ad-
advanced, followed by the spring-activated outer cutting needle. The semi-automated needle is relatively safe, since operators manually push the inner needle into the tissue [14]. The amount of tissue obtained depends on the needle thickness and the length of the specimen notch [35,60].

**SAMPLING TECHNIQUES FOR CORE NEEDLE BIOPSY**

Two options for needle guidance are available during US-guided CNB: a free-hand and a needle device under US guidance [29]. The KSThR Guideline recommends the free-hand technique (especially for experts) because it allows greater freedom for the operators in selecting the puncture point and adjusting the route during the procedure [14].

Patients lie down in a supine position under local anesthesia along the approach route. After vessel mapping using color Doppler US, a snapping wrist movement is favored for rapid and effective needle passage through the skin and thyroid capsule [14]. The entire length of the needle must be monitored during the procedure. Complete vessel mapping along the approach route (from the skin to the nodule) is crucial to avoid vessel injury and ensure safety of the procedure [14].

The number of core specimens is debatable. Hahn et al. [61] suggested at least two core specimens including a nodular tissue and a capsule for nodules with previous inconclusive cytology. The length of the core specimen is also important in that a large length decreases the biopsy number [38,62]. Suh et al. [38] performed less than two core biopsies; however, inconclusive results were not high in their factor analysis. Multiple biopsies can trigger further complications, which should be considered during CNB procedures [38].

Most importantly, the entire length of the needle and needle tip should be ensured during the CNB procedure [14,63]. The needle tip must be within thyroid capsule without large vessels along the imagined firing route. Further, the stylet can be fired followed by the cutting cannula (Fig. 1). When a successful method is used, the location of the specimen notch can be adjusted after stylet firing to select the most appropriate sampling site. Many studies suggest that the nodule tissue, nodule-parenchyma border (and/or visible capsule), and normal thyroid parenchyma should be obtained [14,54,60,64,65]. Nodules found in a dangerous location should be carefully evaluated. A single-action needle is safer because it enables fine adjustment of the specimen notch [14].

Occasionally, thyroid nodules exhibit severe fibrosis and/or hard calcifications. To successfully obtain samples from such hard nodules, using a double-action core needle is useful [14,66-69]. A guiding (coaxial) needle is useful for multiple CNB. In this technique, the biopsy needle is inserted through the lumen of the guiding needle, which is located from the skin close to the nodule surface. After CNB, the tissue sample can be visually assessed to determine if additional CNB is required [14,18,39,42,66]. After visual assessment, the harvested tissue should be immediately fixed in formalin. One to two biopsies are adequate for histological diagnosis. Manual compression should be performed immediately after the biopsy for 20 to 30 minutes [14].

**BIOPSY-RELATED COMPLICATIONS**

The KSThR or NCI guidelines suggest that CNB is safe, well-tolerated, and associated with a low incidence of complications when performed by experienced operators [14,18,32,41]. The reported complication rate is up to 4.1%, with the major complication rate up to 1.9% [16,43,53,55,58,70]. Various CNB complications were reported [14], including hematoma [18,39,41,53,70], voice change [43,55], infection [70,71], hemoptysis [41], edema [18,39,42], vasovagal reaction [70], and dysphagia [70]. A large single-center study (6,687 thyroid nodules of 6,169 patients) reported few major and minor complications (4/6,169 [0.06%] and 49/6,169 [0.79%], respectively) and no procedure-related death or sequelae [15]. A systematic review showed that the major complications including permanent voice changes, hematomas requiring hospital admission and a pseudoaneurysm, and minor complications were reported in six (0.04%) and 175 (1.18%) out of a total of 14,818 patients in 39 thyroid CNB studies from January 1994 to December 2016, respectively [17].

To avoid complications, CNB should be performed by an expert [14] with knowledge of anatomy, anatomic variations, and potential complications [72].

CNB is generally associated with pain and discomfort. US-guidance and the use of 18–21 gauge thin needles (commonly 18-gauge) can reduce the level of pain and the rate of complications [14]. Several studies compared FNA and CNB in terms of pain and tolerability and concluded that they were similar in both procedures [73-75]. A recent study reported that the overall satisfaction scores at 2 weeks after the procedure did not differ significantly between patients who underwent FNA and CNB [75].

Hematoma induced by vascular injury is the most common complication in thyroid CNB with a reported incidence of up to 3.9% [14,15,76], which is similar to that of FNA (1%–6.4%) [77]. Parenchymal edema induced by small vessel injury is fre-
quently associated with hematoma and pain [18,39,42,66]. These vascular injuries are mostly managed with simple compression without the need for medication in most cases [14,18,39]. A few cases of hematoma have been reported after CNB as a major complication [53,78]. To prevent these complications, manual compression should be performed immediately after the biopsy for 20 to 30 minutes to prevent the risk of delayed hematoma [18,42].

Fig. 1. Core needle biopsy of right thyroid nodule. (A) Core needle approach is made through isthmus. (B) Vessels are evaluated with Doppler ultrasound advanced along the direction of the needle. (C) Measurement of distance of fire. (D, E) Firing the stylet first followed by cutting cannula. (F) Schematic illustration of core needle biopsy showing the biopsy site. A cylindrical core of tissue includes tumor and adjacent non-tumor tissue.
Voice change, caused by direct injury or indirect injury due to bleeding or edema to the recurrent laryngeal nerve, is a rare but serious complication after thyroid CNB [37]. A systematic review showed that the overall incidence of permanent and transient voice change after thyroid CNB was 0.0013% (2/14,818) and 0.034% (5/14,818), respectively [17]. The highest incidence (1.9%, 1/54) of voice change was observed in a small study [43]. Recurrent laryngeal nerve palsy associated with hemorrhage/edema is usually transient [14,79]. A trans-isthmic approach under US monitoring is important to prevent direct injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerve [14,72]. A lateral-to-medial approach is dangerous to trachea, esophagus or recurrent laryngeal nerve [16].

Abscess formation is a very rare complication after CNB due to the rich vascular supply and lymphatic drainage, and high iodine content in the thyroid [14,71]. Therefore, the application of prophylactic antibiotics is not recommended before or after CNB.

In the case of a nodule located at the posteromedial margin of the thyroid, CNB is indicated after excluding a pharyngoesophageal or esophageal diverticulum [14,72,80]. Direct injury to the trachea induces cough or hemoptysis [41]. Tinnitus, a rare complication, has been attributed to injury of the perithyroidal vertebral artery and vein followed by an arteriovenous fistula [81]. Tumor seeding after CNB has not been reported but is a possible rare complication [82]. For safe and effective CNB procedure, operators should be familiar with the broad spectrum of complications and preventive methods [14].

**PATHOLOGY REQUEST FORM**

The request form for CNB should include the following information: identification of the patient sample: patient’s name, date of birth, unit number or medical record number; name of the requesting clinician and the clinician who performed the procedure; side and site of the lesion; number of biopsy cores; US imaging findings; and relevant clinical history.

**PREPARATION AND PROCESSING OF CORE NEEDLE BIOPSY SPECIMENS**

Proper tissue processing and histological staining procedures are essential for subsequent pathologic diagnosis. Biopsy specimens are fragile and should be handled with caution. As soon as the biopsy tissues are removed from the thyroid gland, biopsy cores should be wrapped in saline- or fixative-moistened gauze or filter paper to prevent specimen loss and tissue folding, and rapidly fixed with 10% neutral buffered formalin (NBF) (which is equivalent to 4% formaldehyde) to inhibit autolysis and putrefaction. Squeezing of biopsy specimen must be avoided to prevent cell rupture and loss of cell identity when examined microscopically. If a fixative cannot be added in a timely manner, the specimen should be wrapped in a moist saline gauze and refrigerated until the specimen is treated with an appropriate fixative. The ratio of formalin solution to tissue should be at least 10:1 with 10 mL of the fixative for every gram of tissue [83,84]. In clinical practice, the adequate volume of 10% NBF should be 15–20 times the specimen volume. The fixation time depends on sample size. Adequate fixation time with 10% NBF usually requires a minimum of 5 hours of exposure for small biopsy specimen [84]. However, practices may vary between laboratories. Incomplete or poor tissue fixation can lead to poor and unsatisfactory results. All specimens must be placed in a leak-proof container.

Sections obtained from formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded tissue blocks can be used for routine hematoxylin and eosin staining or ancillary tests such as special stain, immunohistochemistry, and molecular tests.

**PATHOLOGY REPORTING FOR THYROID CORE NEEDLE BIOPSY**

The first edition of ‘Pathology Reporting of Thyroid Core Needle Biopsy’ published in 2015 by the Korean Endocrine Pathology CNB Study Group has been widely used by Korean pathologists [28]. A recent study performed in China showed that the pathology reporting system of thyroid CNB is objective, operable and valuable for the pathologic diagnosis of thyroid nodules clinically [85].

The thyroid CNB pathology must be correlated with clinical and US imaging findings. The biopsy results should be reviewed in conjunction with matching surgical pathology after surgery.

A categorical reporting system for CNB ensures effective communication between pathologists and clinicians, with less likelihood of misinterpretation of pathology results. The six original general categories have been retained in the 2019 revision.

To communicate with clarity, the pathology report of thyroid CNB begins with a general diagnostic category. The six general diagnostic categories are shown in Table 1. Subcategorization is often informative especially in diagnostic categories III and IV. A brief microscopic description of the biopsy specimen can be informative, but should not be used alone to report the diagnosis. The standardized terms for the diagnostic categories should be
used. The numerical code alone should not be used without the term of diagnostic category. The risk of malignancy and recommendations associated with each general category are not required but can be provided based on their own CNB-histology correlation or published studies.

I. Non-diagnostic or unsatisfactory

This category is used when the volume of biopsy specimen and the number of follicular cells is inadequate or unsatisfactory to obtain appropriate diagnosis or when the specimen is not representative of US imaging findings of the lesion. The adequacy of the specimen may depend on the inherent nature of the thyroid lesion as well as the experience and technique of the technician conducting the biopsy. This diagnosis is subjective as there is no consensus on the minimum number or amount of follicular components required for satisfactory biopsy specimen. Therefore, the report should explain why the sample is non-diagnostic or unsatisfactory. For example, the sample may be non-tumor tissue adjacent to thyroid (Fig. 2A), extrathyroid tissue alone (e.g., skeletal muscle and mature adipose tissues) as shown in Fig. 2B, an acellular specimen (Fig. 2C, D), or a blood clot. It may show other non-diagnostic or unsatisfactory findings. However, any CNB specimen containing atypical cells should not be considered non-diagnostic or unsatisfactory.

Non-tumor adjacent thyroid tissue or extrathyroid tissue only implies that the thyroid lesion has not been sampled. For some benign follicular lesions with normofollicular structures (Fig. 2A), it may be difficult to assess specimen adequacy because follicular cells of the thyroid nodule show similar histological features with the adjacent thyroid tissue. It is important to determine the transition between the follicular lesion and the surrounding normal parenchyma and compare the pathologic findings with its US imaging results.

II. Benign

This category includes all benign thyroidal and nonthyroidal diseases. A CNB specimen can be classified, based on the specific lesion diagnosis, under the benign category. For example, the sample may be a benign follicular nodule, Hashimoto’s thyroiditis, subacute granulomatous thyroiditis, a nonthyroidal lesion
Thyroid core needle biopsy • 71

(e.g., a parathyroid lesion, benign neurogenic tumors, benign lymph node), or other benign lesions.

A benign follicular nodule encompasses nodular hyperplasia (adenomatoid nodule), colloid nodule, a nodule associated with Graves’ disease, nodular Hashimoto’s thyroiditis, and a subset of follicular adenoma. CNB specimens of these lesions show a benign-appearing normofollicular or macrofollicular structure and do not contain a well-defined fibrous capsule (Fig. 3A, B).

Most degenerating nodules are benign but they often show suspicious US findings and non-diagnostic or indeterminate cytologic results [69]. CNB of degenerating nodule according to the progression stage shows hemorrhagic materials in early phase, stromal fibrosis, and hyalinization infiltrated with chronic inflammatory cells after regression of hemorrhage in the middle phase, and paucicellular densely hyalinized stroma in late phase [69]. In a CNB specimen of degenerating nodule, the lesion can be diagnosed as a benign degenerating nodule if there are no atypical cells in the fibrous hyalinized and/or hemorrhagic background with scarce follicular cells (Fig. 3C, D) [69]. The atypia status can be determined by comparing the histologic features of follicular cells in both the central and peripheral regions included in the CNB specimen. Benign Hürthle cell lesions often occur in patients with Hashimoto’s thyroiditis and may resemble their neoplastic counterparts. The presence of lymphoid aggregates within the Hürthle cell lesion favors a diagnosis of benign (category II) over indeterminate Hürthle cell lesion (category IIIId) or Hürthle cell neoplasm (category IVc) (Fig. 3E, F).

III. Indeterminate lesion

Cytological atypia and histological growth patterns in this category are of uncertain significance and insufficient to be classified under other diagnostic categories. The diagnostic category III “indeterminate lesion” corresponds to “AUS” or “FLUS” in TBSRTC. Most Korean pathologists prefer the term “indeter-
Fig. 3. Examples of benign nodules (category II) in thyroid core needle biopsy. (A) The biopsy specimen shows follicular proliferative lesion without a distinct tumor capsule. (B) The high-power view of Fig. 3A shows benign-appearing follicular cells. This lesion can be interpreted as a benign follicular nodule. (C) The specimen is densely hyalinized and paucicellular. (D) The high-power view of Fig. 3C reveals benign-appearing follicular cells in the hyalinized stroma, suggesting a benign follicular nodule. (E) The specimen shows a Hürthle cell proliferative lesion. (F) The high-power view of Fig. 3E reveals Hürthle cell proliferation and lymphoid aggregates. This lesion should be interpreted as a benign Hürthle cell proliferative lesion rather than Hürthle cell neoplasm.
minate lesion” for category III in the histopathological diagnosis of CNB specimens while some pathologists prefer the term “AUS” [28,65]. Regardless of the terminology used, it is important for the pathologists to use only a single term, either indeterminate lesion, AUS, or FLUS.

The diagnosis of category III is appropriate when a follicular proliferative lesion shows focal nuclear atypia such as nuclear enlargement with pale chromatin, irregular nuclear membrane, and nuclear grooves in a background of predominantly benign-appearing follicles. A microfollicular proliferative lesion separated by a fibrous capsule from the surrounding normal parenchyma suggests a diagnosis of follicular neoplasm (see category IV). If a fibrous capsule or adjacent nonlesional tissue is not identified in a CNB specimen that shows a predominantly microfollicular or trabecular growth pattern, it is reasonable to classify the lesion under diagnostic category III because it is uncertain whether the nodule has a fibrous capsule. A multidisciplinary approach to a thyroid nodule can improve the preoperative diagnostic accuracy of FNA and CNB specimens [9]. Macrofollicular lesions are usually diagnosed as benign on FNA specimens. When US images show a dominant solitary nodule and the CNB specimen microscopically reveals a follicular proliferative lesion with a definite fibrous capsule, then the CNB specimen is diagnosed under category IV “follicular neoplasm,” even in case of a macrofollicular lesion.

Category III should be subclassified according to nuclear atypia, histologic growth patterns, cell type, and other histological features because the subclassification suggests different histological features and a risk of malignancy in the thyroid nodules [65]. A subcategory of nuclear atypia indicates that papillary thyroid carcinoma must be ruled out whereas architectural atypia cannot exclude follicular neoplasm. The following common scenarios may be encountered in case of follicular proliferative lesions.

Ill.a. Indeterminate follicular lesion with nuclear atypia

Examples in this category include follicular proliferative lesions with focal nuclear atypia (Fig. 4A, B), follicular proliferative lesions with equivocal or questionable nuclear atypia, and atypical follicular cells embedded in a fibrotic or hyalinized stroma. This subcategory increases the risk of papillary carcinoma; however, the diagnosis does not reveal the characteristic histological features.

Ill.b. Indeterminate follicular lesion with architectural atypia

Examples in this category include microfollicular proliferative lesions lacking a fibrous capsule or the adjacent nontumor tissue in the specimen; solid or trabecular follicular lesions lacking a fibrous capsule or adjacent nontumor tissue in the specimen (Fig. 4C, D). This subcategory exhibits no nuclear atypia. Some pathologists prefer category III “indeterminate follicular lesion” for a macrofollicular proliferative lesion with a definite fibrous capsule because a macrofollicular pattern is a characteristic of benign thyroid diseases.

Ill.c. Indeterminate follicular lesion with nuclear and architectural atypia

In this category, follicular proliferative lesions show both nuclear and architectural atypia, but lack a fibrous capsule or the adjacent nontumor tissue in the specimen (Fig. 4E, F). Nuclear atypia is mild but lacking typical nuclear features of papillary carcinoma. Architectural atypia suggests microfollicular, solid, or trabecular proliferation. NIFTP is more frequently found in this subcategory [12].

Ill.d. Indeterminate follicular lesion with Hürthle cell changes

Follicular proliferative lesion is comprised exclusively of Hürthle cells, but the specimen lacks a fibrous capsule or the adjacent nontumor tissue (Fig. 5A, B). When Hürthle cell lesion is admixed with lymphoid aggregates, the CNB specimen should be diagnosed as benign Hürthle cell proliferative lesion (Fig. 5E, F).

Ill.e. Indeterminate lesion, not otherwise specified

This category includes follicular proliferative lesions with psammoma bodies but lacking nuclear features of papillary carcinoma; rare cases not explicitly described elsewhere in category III. Pseudo-psammomatous calcifications found in follicular lumens occur in Hürthle cell neoplasms and differ from true psammoma bodies found in papillary carcinoma (Fig. 5C, D).

IV. Follicular neoplasm

In CNB and FNA, the term “follicular neoplasm” is used to encompass neoplastic lesions with a follicular proliferative pattern (e.g., cellular nodular hyperplasia, follicular adenoma, NIFTP, follicular carcinoma, follicular variant of papillary carcinoma, follicular variant of medullary carcinoma) [26,86,87]. In TB-SRTC, the terms “follicular neoplasm” and “suspicious for a follicular neoplasm” were equally acceptable but were not intended to separately denote two different interpretations. Only a single terminology is recommended for use in this category. The histological diagnosis of “follicular neoplasm” in a CNB specimen is based on the presence of a fibrous capsule and microscopic fea-
Fig. 4. Examples of indeterminate follicular lesion (category III) in thyroid core needle biopsy. (A) The middle one in the three biopsy cores shows densely hyalinized stroma. (B) The high-power view of Fig. 4A reveals atypical cells with nuclear atypia embedded in the hyalinized stroma. This lesion can be interpreted as indeterminate follicular lesion with nuclear atypia (category IIIa). (C) The specimen shows microfollicular proliferation and adjacent thyroid parenchyma. The lesion does not contain a fibrous capsule that is required to establish a diagnosis of follicular neoplasm. (D) The high-power view of Fig. 4C reveals microfollicular growth and absence of nuclear atypia. This lesion can be interpreted as indeterminate follicular lesion with architectural atypia (category IIIb). (E) The specimen shows microfollicular proliferation lacking a fibrous capsule and adjacent thyroid parenchyma in the specimen. (F) The high-power view of Fig. 4E reveals microfollicular growth, thin fibrous bands, and mild nuclear atypia, suggesting indeterminate follicular lesion with nuclear and architectural atypia (category IIIc).
Thyroid core needle biopsy • 75

Fig. 5. (A) Specimen showing Hürthle cell proliferative lesion lacking a fibrous capsule or adjacent nonlesional thyroid tissue. (B) The high-power view of Fig. 5A reveals trabecular growth of Hürthle cells without nuclear atypia, suggesting indeterminate follicular lesion with Hürthle cell changes (category IIIId). Psammoma bodies (arrow) are found in a background of Hashimoto’s thyroiditis (C) and normal thyroid tissue (D). These specimens lack nuclear features of papillary carcinoma and can be interpreted as indeterminate lesion, not otherwise specified (category IIIe).

It is important to identify a well-formed fibrous capsule for the diagnosis of follicular neoplasm in the CNB specimen. Fibrous capsule is composed of fibrous connective tissue, which separates tumor cells from the adjacent thyroid tissue. However, it may be difficult to distinguish histologically between fibrous tumor capsule and intrasional fibrous band in small CNB samples (Fig. 7). Correlation between US and pathological findings can be used to differentiate fibrous tumor capsule from intrasional fibrosis. The location of the specimen notch in the US images represents the contents of tissue sample.

The FNA diagnosis for follicular neoplasm is primarily based on the microfollicular or trabecular architecture and the lack of colloid. In a CNB specimen, the growth patterns of a follicular neoplasm can be microfollicular, normofollicular, solid, or trabecular when the tumor fibrous capsule is identified in the sample. A CNB cannot discriminate between a follicular carcinoma and a follicular adenoma because the diagnosis of these neoplasms requires examination of the entire tumor capsule. Neoplastic follicular and Hürthle cells show architectural and cytologic features that differ from the adjacent nontumor thyroid tissue (Figs. 6–8). Hürthle cell neoplasm is classified under a clinically and genetically distinct tumor category according to the 2017 WHO Classification of Tumors of Endocrine Organs [29]. Thyroid CNB is used as a screening test similar to thyroid FNA for the detection of neoplastic nodule that requires lobectomy for a defini-
tive histological diagnosis of surgical specimens. It is recommended that the category IV should be subclassified into four subgroups according to nuclear atypia, histologic growth patterns, and cell type. The subclassification reflects differences in histology and the risk of malignancy in the thyroid nodules [88].

Fig. 6. Examples of follicular neoplasm (category IV) in thyroid core needle biopsy. (A) The low-power view shows a follicular proliferative lesion with a fibrous capsule (arrows). (B) The high-power view of Fig. 6A reveals microfollicular growth pattern and no nuclear atypia. This lesion can be interpreted as follicular neoplasm, conventional type (category IVa). (C) The specimen shows a follicular proliferative lesion with a thick fibrous capsule (arrows). (D) The high-power view of Fig. 6B reveals microfollicular growth pattern and follicular cells with nuclear atypia, suggesting follicular neoplasm with nuclear atypia (category IVb). (E, F) Another example of follicular neoplasm with nuclear atypia (category IVb), in which, the lesion shows a fibrous capsule (arrows) nuclear atypia in focal areas (F).
IVa. Follicular neoplasm, conventional type

This category includes the following types of neoplasm: a microfollicular proliferative lesion with a fibrous capsule (Fig. 6A, B); a mixed microfollicular and normofollicular proliferative lesion with a fibrous capsule; a solid or trabecular follicular lesion with a fibrous capsule; a follicular proliferative lesion showing papillary structure and fibrous capsule but lacking nuclear features of papillary carcinoma.

IVb. Follicular neoplasm with nuclear atypia

Focal nuclear atypia in follicular neoplasm raises the possibility of NIFTP and follicular variants of papillary carcinoma (Fig. 6C, D) [57,88-90]. Before the NIFPT era, this subcategory frequently turned out to be a follicular variant of papillary carcinoma after surgery [89,90].

IVc. Hürthle cell neoplasm

A Hürthle cell proliferative lesion with a fibrous capsule should be diagnosed in this category (Fig. 8). Hürthle cells exhibiting characteristic nuclear features of papillary carcinoma are papillary carcinoma cells, and therefore should not be diagnosed as Hürthle cell neoplasms. Hashimoto’s thyroiditis often presents as a solitary nodule or as a dominant thyroid nodule. CNB sampling from a nodule of Hashimoto thyroiditis shows Hürthle cell proliferation in microfollicles, macrofollicles, or trabecula, which may contain a fibrous capsule surrounding the lesion that could be misinterpreted as Hürthle cell neoplasms (Fig. 3E, F). Careful search for lymphocyte and plasma cell infiltration is essential to distinguish such cases from Hürthle cell neoplasms. The Hürthle cell proliferative lesion admixed with lymphocytes and plasma cells should be diagnosed as benign Hürthle cell proliferative lesion rather than Hürthle cell neoplasm or indeterminate follicular.
IVd. Follicular neoplasm, not otherwise specified

This category includes rare cases not explicitly described elsewhere in category IV.

V. Suspicious for malignancy

The diagnosis of “suspicious for malignancy” is established when histological features are strongly suspicious for malignancy but are insufficient or equivocal for a definitive diagnosis of malignancy. In this category, a lesion may be suspicious for papillary thyroid carcinoma (Fig. 9), medullary thyroid carcinoma, poorly differentiated thyroid carcinoma, metastatic carcinoma, lymphoma, or show other suspicious findings. The diagnostic uncertainty in this category is generally caused by suboptimal sampling or low cellularity.

Follicular variants of papillary carcinoma and NIFTP share histologic features of follicular growth and nuclear features of papillary carcinoma, and cannot be discriminated by FNA alone. The diagnosis of papillary carcinoma by FNA requires either intranuclear pseudoinclusions, papillae, or psammoma bodies. In a CNB specimen, both areas of tumor and nontumor can be histologically evaluated. When a follicular proliferative lesion with nuclear features of papillary carcinoma shows capsular invasion in CNB specimens, the findings should be interpreted as papillary carcinoma. In the absence of capsular invasion, it should be interpreted as follicular neoplasm with nuclear atypia. However, when a fibrous capsule or adjacent nonlesional tissue is not identified in the CNB specimen that shows a predominantly follicular growth pattern and nuclear features of papillary carcinoma, the findings are best interpreted as suspicious for papillary carcinoma.

Ancillary immunohistochemical or molecular studies facilitate the diagnosis of CNB specimens with suspected malignancy. An immunostaining panel consisting of galectin-3, HBME1, cytokeratin 19, or CD56 facilitates the diagnosis of lesions suspi-

Fig. 8. Thyroid core needle biopsy showing Hürthle cell neoplasm (category IVc). The images in the left (A, C) and right (B, D) columns show low-power findings and corresponding high-power views, respectively. The tumor capsule (arrows) can be thick (A) or thin (C).
cious for papillary thyroid carcinoma (Fig. 9) [91-93]. A combination of at least two immunostaining markers is recommended to improve the diagnostic accuracy [92]. The *BRAF* V600E mutations detected via molecular test or immunohistochemistry for *BRAF* VE1 antibody strongly suggest a diagnosis of papillary carcinoma (Fig. 9) [91]. A diagnosis of medullary thyroid carci-

Fig. 9. (A) The specimen shows a follicular proliferative lesion with an ill-defined border showing a different morphology compared with adjacent normal thyroid tissue. (B) The high-power view in Fig. 9A reveals atypical follicular cells with nuclear atypia and fibrous bands. These morphological features can be interpreted as suspicious for papillary carcinoma (category V). In this case, immunohistochemical stains for galectin-3 (C) and *BRAF* VE1 (D, F) facilitate the diagnosis of papillary carcinoma. (E) A paucicellular, hyalinized follicular lesion exhibits morphological features pathognomonic for papillary carcinoma. The diagnosis of the lesion can be established as papillary carcinoma when atypical follicular cells in the specimen are positive for *BRAF* VE1 immunostaining (F).
noma can be confirmed with positive immunostaining for calcitonin on the CNB specimen. A diagnosis of lymphoma is established using immunophenotyping studies on a CNB specimen that is suspicious for lymphoma [56].

VI. Malignant

Most thyroid malignancies, except for follicular carcinoma/Hürthle cell carcinoma, exhibit typical histological features and are easily diagnosed as a malignancy on a CNB specimen. The

![Fig. 10. Core needle biopsies of malignant thyroid tumors (category VI). (A, B) Diffuse sclerosing variant of papillary carcinoma. (C, D) Poorly differentiated carcinoma shows solid, trabecular, and insular growth patterns and mitosis (arrows) under high-power field. Medullary carcinoma shows typical histologic features under low-power field (E) and high-power field (F). Nuclei of tumor cells are round to oval and carry coarsely granular chromatin. The cytoplasm is finely granular eosinophilic to amphophilic.](https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2019.12.04)
category of thyroid malignancies includes the following diagnoses: papillary thyroid carcinoma (Fig. 10A, B), poorly differentiated carcinoma (Fig. 10C, D), medullary thyroid carcinoma (Fig. 10E, F), anaplastic thyroid carcinoma (Fig. 11A–C), lymphoma (Fig. 11D–F), and metastatic carcinoma.

COMMON PITFALLS IN THE INTERPRETATION OF CORE NEEDLE BIOPSY

The follicular cells in a CNB specimen appear smaller and show darker chromatin than is typical in a surgical specimen (Fig. 12A, B). Therefore, the nuclear features of papillary carcinoma are less prominent in a CNB specimen (Fig. 12C, D).

Nuclear artifacts that mimic intranuclear cytoplasmic pseudoinclusions in papillary carcinoma may also be present in benign follicular cells (Fig. 12E). The artifactual vacuoles or bubbles are irregular in shape and appear pale on staining, whereas intranuclear pseudoinclusions in papillary carcinoma are round and sharply delineated by the rim of the nuclear membrane, and exhibit cytoplasmic staining quality (Fig. 12F).

![Fig. 11. Core needle biopsies of malignant thyroid tumors (category VI). (A) Anaplastic thyroid carcinoma shows diffuse growth infiltration, with no papillary or follicular structure. (B) The tumor cells show marked nuclear pleomorphism and necrosis. (C) PAX8 immunostaining is focally positive in this anaplastic thyroid carcinoma. (D) In extranodal marginal zone lymphoma of mucosa-associated tissue, the lymphoma cells infiltrate follicles and destroy normal parenchyma. (E) Lymphoepithelial lesions are shown. (F) Tumor cells are diffusely positive for CD20.](https://doi.org/10.4132/jptm.2019.12.04)
Fig. 12. Diagnostic pitfalls in thyroid core needle biopsy. Follicular cells are smaller and darker in core needle biopsy (A) compared with the resected specimen (B) in the same thyroid nodule. (C) The core needle biopsy shows histologic features of papillary carcinoma. (D) The high-power view of Fig. 12C shows nuclear overlapping and crowding. Nuclear chromatin is finely dispersed but nuclear clearance is not as prominent as in papillary carcinoma derived from routine formalin-fixed sections of the resected specimen. (E) Nuclear pseudoinclusion-like nuclear bubbles or vacuoles (arrows) are often seen in the core needle biopsy specimen of benign follicular nodule. These structures show empty appearance and lack a thick nuclear membrane rim. (F) Core needle biopsy of papillary carcinoma shows intranuclear pseudoinclusions (arrows) exhibiting the characteristic cytoplasmic staining and are sharply demarcated by a nuclear membrane.
CONCLUSION

US-guided CNB represents an alternative procedure to overcome the challenges associated with FNA for the diagnosis of thyroid nodules. The main goal of thyroid CNB is to obtain a large amount of thyroid lesion with minimal morbidity, and to triage patients with thyroid disease who need surgical management. These practical guidelines serve as a clinical guide for successful thyroid CNB and provide a standardized system for pathology reporting of CNB specimens.

ORCID

Chan Kwon Jung: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-6843-3708
Jung Hwan Baek: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-0480-4754
Dong Gyu Na: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-6422-1652
Young Lyun Oh: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-9127-4642
Ka Hee Yi: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-1999-9841
Ho-Cheol Kang: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-0448-1345

Author Contributions

Conceptualization: CKJ, JHB.
Data curation: CKJ, JHB, DGN.
Formal analysis: CKJ, JHB, DGN.
Funding acquisition: CKJ.
Investigation: CKJ, JHB, DGN, YLO, HCK.
Methodology: CKJ, JHB, DGN, KHY, YLO, HCK.
Project administration: CKJ.
Resources: CKJ, JHB, DGN, KHY, YLO, HCK.
Supervision: CKJ, JHB.
Validation: CKJ, JHB, DGN, KHY, YLO, HCK.
Visualization: CKJ, JHB, DGN, KHY, YLO, HCK.
Writing—original draft: CKJ, JHB, DGN.
Writing—review & editing: CKJ, JHB, DGN, KHY, YLO, HCK.

Conflicts of Interest


Funding

These practical guidelines were supported by KTA without support from any commercial sources. This project was also partially supported by a grant (2017R1D1A1B03029597) from the Basic Science Research Program through the National Research Foundation of Korea.

Acknowledgments

The authors would like to thank the members of KTA, KSThR, and the Endocrine Pathology Study Group of the Korean Society of Pathologists for their valuable expertise and suggestions throughout this study. This document was approved by the Clinical Practice Guidelines Development Committee of the KTA in October 2019. The following professional organizations reviewed and endorsed the final document: KSThR, Korean Endocrine Pathology Study Group, and Korean Endocrine Society.

REFERENCES

31. Haugen BR, Alexander EK, Bible KC, et al. 2015 American Thyroid Association management guidelines for adult patients with thyroid nodules and differentiated thyroid cancer: The American Thyroid Association Guidelines Task Force on Thyroid Nodules and Differentiated Thyroid Cancer. Thyroid 2016; 26: 1-133.
36. Suh CH, Baek JH, Kim KW, et al. The role of core-needle biopsy for thyroid nodules with initially nondiagnostic fine-needle aspiration


75. Kim HJ, Kim YK, Moon JH, Choi JY, Choi SI. Thyroid core needle biopsy: patients’ pain and satisfaction compared to fine needle aspiration. Endocrine 2019; 65: 365-70.
Analysis of the molecular subtypes of preoperative core needle biopsy and surgical specimens in invasive breast cancer

Ye Sul Jeong1, Jun Kang1, Jieun Lee2,3, Tae-Kyung Yoo4, Sung Hun Kim5, Ahwon Lee1,3

1Department of Hospital Pathology, 2Division of Medical Oncology, Department of Internal Medicine, Seoul St. Mary’s Hospital, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul; 3Cancer Research Institute, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul; Departments of 4Surgery and 5Radiology, Seoul St. Mary’s Hospital, College of Medicine, The Catholic University of Korea, Seoul, Korea

Background: Accurate molecular classification of breast core needle biopsy (CNB) tissue is important for determining neoadjuvant systemic therapies for invasive breast cancer. The researchers aimed to evaluate the concordance rate (CR) of molecular subtypes between CNBs and surgical specimens. Methods: This study was conducted with invasive breast cancer patients who underwent surgery after CNB at Seoul St. Mary’s Hospital between December 2014 and December 2017. Estrogen receptor (ER), progesterone receptor (PR), human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2), and Ki67 were analyzed using immunohistochemistry. ER and PR were evaluated by Allred score (0–8). HER2 was graded from 0 to +3, and all 2+ cases were reflex tested with silver in situ hybridization. The labeling index of Ki67 was counted by either manual scoring or digital image analysis. Molecular subtypes were classified using the above surrogate markers. Results: In total, 629 patients were evaluated. The CRs of ER, PR, HER2, and Ki67 were 96.5% (kappa, 0.883; p < .001), 93.0% (kappa, 0.824; p < .001), 99.7% (kappa, 0.988; p < .001), and 78.7% (kappa, 0.577; p < .001), respectively. Digital image analysis of Ki67 in CNB showed better concordance with Ki67 in surgical specimens (CR, 82.3%; kappa, 0.639 for digital image analysis vs. CR, 76.2%; kappa, 0.534 for manual counting). The CRs of luminal A, luminal B, HER2, and triple negative types were 89.0%, 70.0%, 82.9%, and 77.2%, respectively. Conclusions: CNB was reasonably accurate for determining ER, PR, HER2, Ki67, and molecular subtypes. Using digital image analysis for Ki67 in CNB produced more accurate molecular classifications.

Key Words: Breast neoplasms; Core needle biopsy; Receptors, estrogen; Receptors, progesterone; Human epidermal growth factor receptor 2; Immunohistochemistry

Breast cancer is a heterogeneous disease that is classified into four molecular subtypes: luminal A, luminal B, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) positive, and triple negative. Proper disease subtyping is important for predicting response to systemic therapy and prognosis. Immunohistochemistry for estrogen receptor (ER), progesterone receptor (PR), HER2, and Ki67 can be used to approximate molecular subtype classifications [1-3].

Endocrine therapy, cytotoxic therapy, and anti-HER2 therapy are used in the adjuvant setting for breast cancer, and molecular subtyping is used to decide which therapies are appropriate [3]. Neoadjuvant therapy is important in advanced breast cancer as it can reduce tumor size, facilitating breast conserving surgery, and decrease distant micrometastasis. Neoadjuvant therapy may also facilitate axillary preservation [4-7]. After receiving neoadjuvant therapy, some patients achieve pathologic complete response (pCR), at which point, core needle biopsy (CNB) tissue is the only specimen for obtaining information about prognostic markers that could impact therapeutic plans. Although some patients still have tumor burden after neoadjuvant therapy, CNB might be the only specimen available in which to evaluate histological markers because neoadjuvant therapy can alter histological grade, expression of hormonal receptors, HER2 status, and Ki67. Consequently, assessing the concordance rate (CR) of marker status between CNB and surgical specimen is crucial [8,9]. It has been reported that CRs of biomarker status between CNB and surgic-
cal specimen were high but variable: 79%–100% [10]. However, differences in Ki67 status according to manual or digital image analysis and the impact on subsequent molecular subtyping have not been adequately investigated. The aim of this study was to evaluate and analyze CRs of hormone receptors, HER2, Ki67, and molecular subtypes in invasive breast cancer patients between CNB and surgical specimens.

**MATERIALS AND METHODS**

**Patient population and tissue samples**

This study retroactively analyzed clinical data from cancer patients who underwent surgery after diagnosis by CNB at Seoul St. Mary’s Hospital. Clinicopathologic data of age; histologic type; grade; operation method; pTNM stage; immunohistochemical staining results of ER, PR, HER2, and Ki67; and whether digital image analysis was used to analyze results of Ki67 staining and silver in situ hybridization (SISH) for HER2 were obtained through medical records and pathologic reports. CNBs were mostly performed by ultrasound guidance with 14-gauge needles; 4–5 pieces were received for mass forming lesions and >7 pieces for microcalcifications. Especially when microcalcification was noted, an ultrasound-guided or stereotactic mammotome biopsy with 11-gauge needles was performed, and at least 12 pieces of core tissue were obtained for pathologic examination. All specimens were routinely processed and diagnosed according to national and international guidelines. Briefly, CNB specimens were fixed in 10% neutral formalin for 8–11 hours, embedded in paraffin, and sectioned at 4-μm thickness; hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) staining was subsequently performed. Surgical specimens were routinely processed and diagnosed following the instructions of the pathology laboratory manual. Briefly, ER, PR, HER2, and Ki67 IHC staining was subsequently performed. Surgical specimens were cut into 0.5–1-cm-thick sections after the operation and fixed in 10% neutral formalin for 8–24 hours; H&E staining was subsequently performed. Patients who were diagnosed with ductal carcinoma in situ, microinvasive breast cancer, or had received preoperative systemic therapy were excluded.

**Evaluation of ER, PR, HER2, and Ki67**

Immunohistochemistry (IHC) for ER, PR, HER2, and Ki67 was performed following the instructions of the pathology laboratory manual. Briefly, ER, PR, HER2, and Ki67 IHC staining was performed on an automated Ventana BenchmarkXT slide stainer (Ventana, Tucson, AZ, USA), using primary antibodies against ER (prediluted, SP1, Ventana), PR (prediluted, 1E2, Ventana), HER2 (prediluted, 4B5, Ventana), and Ki67 (prediluted, MIB-1, Ventana). The HER2 SISH assay was performed with INFORM HER2 DNA probes (Ventana) on the Ventana BenchMarkXT automated slide stainer according to the manufacturer’s protocols.

The Allred scoring system was used to interpret ER and PR staining [11]. The proportion of positive-stained tumor cells (the proportion score) was rated as follows: 0, no cells stained positive; 1, 0%–1% positive; 2, 1%–10% positive; 3, 10%–33% positive; 4, 33%–66% positive; and 5, 66%–100% positive. Intensity was scored on the basis of average staining intensity: 0, negative; 1, weak; 2, intermediate; and 3, strong. The sum of the proportion and intensity scores is referred to as the Allred score, and scores >2 are defined as positive [11]. HER2 status was scored from 0–3+ by IHC, where 0 was defined as no staining or membrane staining that was incomplete, faint, or barely perceptible in ≤10% of invasive tumor cells; 1+ was defined as >10% invasive tumor cells with incomplete membrane staining that was faint or barely perceptible; 2+ was defined as >10% invasive tumor cells with complete weak to moderate membrane staining (considered equivocal); and 3+ was defined as >10% invasive tumor cells with complete, intense membrane staining (positive according to American Society of Clinical Oncology [ASCO]/College of American Pathologists [CAP] guidelines) [12,13]. Cases of scores 0 and 1+ were considered negative, while those 2+ were further evaluated by reflex HER2 SISH to confirm HER2 gene amplification.

Ki67 was evaluated according to the percentage of positively-stained invasive tumor cells of any intensity by pathologists manually or using an automated digital image analysis system. The “eyeballed” estimation method, which is approximate counting throughout the immunostained slide, was used for manual counting [14]. For Ki67 digital image analysis, slides were scanned by an iScan Coreo slide scanner with a 20× objective (Ventana), and invasive tumor components were analyzed using Virtuoso software (Ventana). At least three high-power fields (400×) including hot spots where the highest Ki67 staining area and two average intensity areas of Ki67 staining were selected. More than 1,000 tumor cells were counted according to the International Ki67 in Breast Cancer Working Group [15]. In the case of CNB with a heterogeneous Ki67 staining pattern, researchers attempted to select all tumor cells to evaluate Ki67 expression. Cases in which less than 500 tumor cells were present in CNB were excluded from digital image analysis. Digital image analysis of Ki67 was performed in 41% (260/629) of CNBs and all but 14 surgical specimens. The cutoff value for Ki67 was 20%.

**Molecular subtype classifications**

Molecular subtypes were classified as follows: luminal A: ER-
and/or PR-positive, HER2-negative, Ki67 ≤ 20%; luminal B: ER- and/or PR-positive, HER2-negative, Ki67 > 20% or ER- and/or PR-positive, HER2-positive, any Ki67; HER2-positive: ER- and PR-negative, HER2-positive; and triple-negative (basal-like): ER-, PR-, and HER2-negative. Subsequently, luminal B was further divided as luminal B–HER2–negative (ER- and/or PR-positive, HER2-negative, Ki67 > 20%) and luminal B–HER2–positive (ER- and/or PR-positive, HER2-positive, any Ki67) [2,3].

**Statistical analysis**

CRs of receptor status and molecular subtypes between CNB and surgical specimens were calculated as percentage and Kappa value. K-values < 0.20 were correlated with poor agreement, 0.21–0.40 fair agreement, 0.41–0.60 moderate agreement, 0.61–0.80 good agreement, and 0.81–1.00 very good agreement. P-values were calculated using the chi-square test or Fisher exact test, and p-values of < 0.05 were considered significant. Statistical analyses were performed using IBM SPSS Statistics software ver. 24.0 for Windows (IBM Corp., Armonk, NY, USA). Sankey diagrams depicting changes in Allred scores were computed in SankeyMATIC (http://sankeymatic.com).

**Ethics statement**

The protocol of the study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of The Catholic Medical Center, which waived the requirement for informed consent (approval KC19RE-SI0333).

**RESULTS**

**Patient characteristics**

In total, 629 patients were included in the study. The median age was 53 (range, 23 to 89 years). All patients received either breast conserving surgery (70.4%) or mastectomy (29.6%). The most common pathological tumor type was invasive carcinoma of no special type (80.1%) (Tables 1, 2).

**Concordance of ER, PR, HER2, and Ki67**

The CRs of surgical specimens with CNBs for ER and PR were 96.5% (kappa, 0.883; p < .001) and 93.0% (kappa, 0.824; p < .001), respectively (Table 3). The concordance of PR was slightly lower than that of ER. Changes in Allred score for ER and PR are shown in Figs. 1 and 2. The CR of surgical specimens with CNBs for hormone receptor status was 95.1%, with very good agreement (kappa, 0.824; p < .001). The CR of HER2 IHC was 81.4%, with moderate agreement (kappa, 0.591; p < .001). After reflex HER2 SISH, the CR of HER2 status was 99.7% (kappa, 0.988; p < .001). The CR for Ki67 was 78.7% (kappa, 0.577; p < .001, moderate agreement), which was lower than for hormone receptors and HER2 due to higher Ki67 expression in surgical specimens (Table 3).

We next analyzed whether the Ki67 counting method (automated digital image analysis system or manual scoring) affected the CR for Ki67. Among the 629 cases, 260 CNBs were analyzed.
Table 3. Concordance between CNB and surgical specimen for ER, PR, HER2, and Ki67 results

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surgical specimen</th>
<th>CNB</th>
<th>CNB</th>
<th>Total (%)</th>
<th>Concordance rate</th>
<th>Kappa*</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neg</td>
<td>Pos</td>
<td>Equi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hormone receptor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>114 (18.1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; .001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>508</td>
<td>515 (81.9)</td>
<td>95.1</td>
<td>0.824</td>
<td>&lt; .001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>629</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>120 (19.1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt; .001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>503</td>
<td>509 (80.9)</td>
<td>96.5</td>
<td>0.883</td>
<td>&lt; .001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>519</td>
<td>629</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>178 (28.3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>435</td>
<td>451 (71.7)</td>
<td>93.0</td>
<td>0.824</td>
<td>&lt; .001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>463</td>
<td>629</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HER2 (IHC)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg</td>
<td>396</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>466 (74.1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>79 (12.8)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equiv</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>43 (13.4)</td>
<td>81.4</td>
<td>0.591</td>
<td>&lt; .001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>427</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>511</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HER2 (IHC + SISH)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg</td>
<td>532</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>533 (84.7)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pos</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>96 (15.3)</td>
<td>99.7</td>
<td>0.988</td>
<td>&lt; .001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>533</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>629</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ki67 ≤ 20%</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤ 20%</td>
<td>225</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>258 (41.0)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 20%</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>371 (59.0)</td>
<td>78.7</td>
<td>0.577</td>
<td>&lt; .001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>326</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>629</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Values are presented as number (%) unless otherwise indicated.

CNB, core needle biopsy; ER, estrogen receptor; PR, progesterone receptor; HER2, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2; Neg, negative; Pos, positive; Equiv, Equivocal; IHC, immunohistochemistry; SISH, silver in situ hybridization.

*Kappa: < 0.20, poor agreement; 0.21–0.40, fair agreement; 0.41–0.60, moderate agreement; 0.61–0.80, good agreement; 0.81–1.00, very good agreement.

Fig. 1. Sankey diagrams depicting changes in Allred scores for estrogen receptor (ER) from core needle biopsy (CNB) to surgical specimen. EB, excisional biopsy (surgical specimen).

Fig. 2. Sankey diagrams depicting changes in Allred scores for progesterone receptor (PR) from core needle biopsy (CNB) to surgical specimen. EB, excisional biopsy (surgical specimen).
with a digital image system and 369 with manual counting. When CNB Ki67s were obtained using the digital image analysis system, the CR for Ki67 was 82.3% (kappa, 0.639; p < .001), and when CNB Ki67s were obtained by manual counting, the CR for Ki67 was 76.2% (kappa, 0.534; p < .001) (Table 4).

**Concordance of molecular subtypes**

Molecular subtypes demonstrated good agreement (kappa, 0.672 in four subtypes and kappa, 0.696 in five subtypes). CRs of surgical specimens with CNBs for luminal A, luminal B, HER2, and triple negative were 89.0%, 70.0%, 82.9%, and 77.2%, respectively (kappa, 0.672; good agreement). The CRs of luminal A and HER2 showed significant agreement; however, luminal B showed the lowest CR among the molecular subtypes. When luminal B was subdivided into luminal B–HER2–negative and –HER2–positive, the CRs for these receptors between CNB and surgical specimens were 61.7% and 95.1%, respectively. Therefore, the especially high discrepancy seen for luminal B–HER2–negative occurred because molecular subtypes changed from luminal A due to low Ki67 in CNB (75 cases) to luminal B–HER2–negative after high Ki67 was found in surgical specimens (Tables 5, 6).

**DISCUSSION**

Neoadjuvant therapy in breast cancer can reduce tumor burden, which facilitates breast conserving surgery, preserves the axilla, and identifies response to systemic therapy before surgery [5–7]. Typically, treatment policies for neoadjuvant systemic therapy are decided according to the molecular subtype determined by ER, PR, HER2, and Ki67 status of CNB. These are also used to predict prognoses of breast cancer patients. In this study, the CRs of ER, PR, HER2, and Ki67 status in CNB specimens prior to surgery and those from surgical specimens were analyzed to confirm the accuracy of molecular classifications performed by CNB. ER and PR status showed high CRs of 96.5% (kappa, 0.883) and 93.0% (kappa, 0.824), respectively (Table 3). However, a greater distribution and bigger change of

---

**Table 4. Comparing Ki67 cutoff values between CNB and surgical specimens by digital image analysis and manual scoring assessment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ki67</th>
<th>Digital image analysis</th>
<th>Manual counting method</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CNB</td>
<td>Concordance rate (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≤ 20%</td>
<td>&gt;20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≤ 20%</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;20%</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CNB, core needle biopsy.

*Kappa: < 0.20, poor agreement; 0.21–0.40, fair agreement; 0.41–0.60, moderate agreement; 0.61–0.80, good agreement; 0.81–1.00, very good agreement.

**Table 5. Concordance between CNB and surgical specimens for molecular subtypes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surgical specimen</th>
<th>CNB</th>
<th>Luminal A</th>
<th>Luminal B</th>
<th>Triple negative</th>
<th>HER2+</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Concordance rate (%)</th>
<th>Kappa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Luminal A</td>
<td>218</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>89.0</td>
<td>0.672</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luminal B</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>270</td>
<td>70.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HER2+</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>82.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triple negative</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>77.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>237</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>629</td>
<td>79.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CNB, core needle biopsy; HER2, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2.

**Table 6. Concordance between CNB and surgical specimens for molecular subtypes including the subdivision of luminal B**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surgical specimen</th>
<th>CNB</th>
<th>Luminal A</th>
<th>Luminal B (HER2–)</th>
<th>Luminal B (HER2+)</th>
<th>Triple negative</th>
<th>HER2+</th>
<th>Total</th>
<th>Concordance rate (%)</th>
<th>Kappa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Luminal A</td>
<td>218</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>245</td>
<td>89.0</td>
<td>0.696</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luminal B (HER2–)</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>129</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>61.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luminal B (HER2+)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>95.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HER2+</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>82.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triple negative</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>77.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>629</td>
<td>78.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CNB, core needle biopsy; HER2, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2.
Allred scores from CNB to surgical specimen were noted for PR than ER (Figs. 1, 2). These findings are consistent with previous reports [16,17] and suggest that the reason behind these findings is heterogeneity of PR expression in tumor cells.

Identifying HER2-positive breast cancer patients by CNB is important, as neoadjuvant HER2-targeted therapy is an effective option for these patients. In this study, the CR for HER2 status, as determined by HER2 IHC or reflex HER2 SISH, was as high as 99.7% (kappa, 0.988), which was higher than most previous reports (ranging from 61%–97.3%) [10,18-29]. The reason for this high CR could partially be due to performing reflex HER2 SISH for all HER2 IHC equivocal cases to determine final HER2 status strictly following ASCO/CAP guidelines. Sufficient CNB specimens were obtained when radiological microcalcifications were noted. In our hospital, at least four core passes in CNB are usually obtained by ultrasound guidance with a 14-gauge needle. However, when radiological calcifications were identified, additional core passes (at least seven) were performed. Sometimes when scattered calcification was noted, ultrasound-guided mammotome biopsy was performed with an 11-gauge needle, and > 12 core passes were obtained. It has been reported that radiologically recognized calcifications in breast cancer are associated with HER2 molecular subtype and pCR after neoadjuvant chemotherapy [30,31]. Another reason for collection of multiple cores in CNB is to overcome tumor heterogeneity. For accurate histologic diagnoses of breast cancer, at least four cores should be obtained using a 14-gauge needle [32]. It has been reported that the accuracy of histologic diagnoses (including tumor grade) plateaus at 74% when four passes are performed, while accuracy is only 32% with one pass [33]. Greer et al. [34] reported that the concordance for ER and PR between CNB and surgical specimen improved with increasing numbers of core passes. However, they also found the concordance of HER2 to be limited when tumor heterogeneity was present [34].

Although ER, PR, and HER2 status shown high CRs between CNB and surgical specimen, Ki67 revealed only moderate agreement. There were 75 cases classified as luminal A from CNB that were moved to luminal B after evaluating surgical specimens, as Ki67 was higher in the surgical specimen than in CNB. Additionally, a higher median value for Ki67 was identified in the surgical specimens (Tables 3, 5, 6). The tendency for a greater Ki67 labeling index in surgical specimens than in CNB has been reported in several studies. The authors explained that it was due to tumor heterogeneity [15,27]. Another study reported that the CR for Ki67 between CNB and surgical specimen improved slightly with increased number of core passes to account for tumor heterogeneity; however, after more than six core passes, a plateau was reached [34]. In the current study, the Ki67 labeling index was obtained by digital image analysis or manual scoring (Table 4). Digital image analysis of Ki67 in CNB showed better concordance with surgical specimen Ki67 (CR, 82.3% vs. 76.2; kappa, 0.639 vs. 0.534, respectively).

Finally, 21.0% of cases switched molecular subtype between CNB and surgical specimen, mostly because Ki67 changed from low to high; for example, 75 luminal A cases as assessed by CNB were moved to luminal B after evaluating surgical specimens (Table 5). There were also a few cases where hormone status changed from positive to negative, 16 cases of luminal B changed to triple negative, and six cases changed to HER2. The reason for these discrepancies could be fixation conditions such as delayed, under-, or over-fixation with formalin; crush artifacts by needle sampling; or tumor heterogeneity.

In conclusion, CNB with adequate core passes can be reliably used to access molecular subtypes for systemic treatment in invasive breast cancer. Digital image analysis of Ki67 should be used to achieve better, more accurate molecular classifications from CNBs.

**ORCID**

Ye Sul Jeong: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-2952-1662
Jun Kang: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-7967-0917
Jieun Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-2656-0650
Tae-Kyung Yoo: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-5790-353X
Sung Hun Kim: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4478-9720
Ahwon Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-2523-9531

**Author Contributions**

Conceptualization: AL.
Data curation: YSJ, TKY.
Formal analysis: YSJ, SHK, AL.
Methodology: YSJ, SHK, JK, AL.
Project administration: YSJ.
Resources: AL.
Supervision: AL.
Validation: YSJ, JL, AL.
Visualization: YSJ.
Writing—original draft: YSJ.
Writing—review & editing: YSJ, SHK, JK, AL.

**Conflicts of Interest**

The authors declare that they have no potential conflicts of
interest.

Funding
No funding to declare.

REFERENCES

Breast mucinous carcinoma (MC) is defined as floating tumor clusters within extracellular mucin pools [1]. MC is divided into two subtypes, pure and mixed, according to the proportion of mucinous component in the tumor [1]. Pure MC (PMC) is composed of more than 90% mucinous component, is a rare type of breast cancer accounting for approximately 2% of invasive cancers, and usually occurs in elderly patients (> 55 years) [1,2]. PMC generally has a low nuclear grade and good prognosis [1,3].

Typical PMC is positive for estrogen receptor (ER) and progesterone receptor (PR), whereas it is negative for human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) [1,3,4]. While HER2 overexpression occurs in 15%–20% of invasive breast cancers [5], it has been reported in only 2.6–9.0% of PMC [4,6-8].

Clinicopathologic characteristics of HER2-positivePMC have not been studied well because of the rarity of this entity. Herein, we investigate the clinicopathologic characteristics of HER2-positive PMC.

Background: Pure mucinous carcinoma (PMC) is a rare type of breast cancer, estimated to represent 2% of invasive breast cancer. PMC is typically positive for estrogen receptors (ER) and progesterone receptors (PR) and negative for human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2). The clinicopathologic characteristics of HER2-positive PMC have not been investigated. Methods: Pathology archives were searched for PMC diagnosed from January 1999 to April 2018. Clinicopathologic data and microscopic findings were reviewed and compared between HER2-positive PMC and HER2-negative PMC. We also analyzed the differences in disease-free survival (DFS) and overall survival according to clinicopathologic parameters including HER2 status in overall PMC cases. Results: There were 21 HER2-positive cases (4.8%) in 438 PMCs. The average tumor size of HER2-positive PMC was 32.21 mm (± 26.55). Lymph node metastasis was present in seven cases. Compared to HER2-negative PMC, HER2-positive PMC presented with a more advanced T category (p < .001), more frequent lymph node metastasis (p = .009), and a higher nuclear and histologic grade (p < .001). Microscopically, signet ring cells were frequently observed in HER2-positive PMC (p < .001), whereas a micropapillary pattern was more frequent in HER2-negative PMC (p = .012). HER2-positive PMC was more frequently negative for ER (33.3% vs. 1.2%) and PR (28.6% vs. 7.2%) than HER2-negative PMC and showed a high Ki-67 labeling index. During follow-up, distant metastasis and recurrence developed in three HER2-positive PMC patients. Multivariate analysis revealed that only HER2-positivity and lymph node status were significantly associated with DFS. Conclusions: Our results suggest that HER2-positive PMC is a more aggressive subgroup of PMC. HER2 positivity should be considered for adequate management of PMC.

Key Words: Breast neoplasms; Receptor, ErbB-2; Pure mucinous adenocarcinoma
MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients and data
The pathology archives of Samsung Medical Center were searched, and 637 PMC cases were diagnosed from January 1999 to April 2018, which accounted for 2.9% of 22,318 invasive breast cancer cases. Clinicopathologic data were archived from electronic medical records and pathology reports and comprised of sex, age, type of procedure, tumor size, nuclear grade, histologic grade, lymph node status, presence of lymphovascular invasion (LVI), extensive intraductal component (EIC), chemotherapy, hormonal therapy, radiotherapy, recurrence status, distant metastasis, and death. TNM classification was designated according to the 8th edition of the American Joint Committee on Cancer.

Cases were excluded if (1) the tumor were composed of less than 90% MC (i.e., mixed MC), (2) multiple synchronous carcinomas occurred with one or more tumors of non-mucinous histology that were of comparable size or larger than the PMC, (3) tumor size was less than 0.1 cm (microinvasive carcinoma), (4) surgery was not performed, or (5) tumor slides were not available for review. Ultimately, 438 PMC cases were included.

Histologic review
Tumor slides were re-evaluated by two pathologists (Y.J. Jang and S.Y. Cho). Nuclear grade and histologic grade were classified on the basis of the Bloom-Richardson grading system [1]. EIC was defined as more than 25% ductal carcinoma in situ area within the invasive carcinoma [1]. Cases were subdivided into type A or type B depending on the cellularity of tumor cells.
i.e., classic, hypocellular tumors with more extracellular mucin were classified as type A (Fig. 1A), and hypercellular PMC with large cell clusters were classified as type B (Fig. 1B) [1]. The presence of a micropapillary component or signet ring cells was also evaluated.

**Immunohistochemistry and silver in situ hybridization**

Immunohistochemistry (IHC) for ER (1:200, clone 6F11, Bond-Max System, Novocastra, Newcastle upon Tyne, UK), PR (1:800, clone 16, Bond-Max System, Novocastra), HER2 (4B5, BenchMark XT, Ventana, Tucson, AZ, USA), and Ki-67 (1:200, clone MIB-1, Dako, Glostrup, Denmark) was performed on formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded (FFPE) tissue. Silver in situ hybridization (SISH) analysis was performed using INFORM DDISH HER-2 SISH probe kits (BenchMark XT, Ventana) on FFPE tissue. ER and PR were considered positive when at least 1% of tumor cells showed nuclear staining according to the American Society of Clinical Oncology/College of American Pathologists guidelines [9]. HER2 was considered positive if ≥10% of tumor cells showed 3+ staining by IHC or 2+ staining by IHC with amplification using SISH [10]. The Ki-67 labeling index was determined via automated image analysis. After the Ki-67–stained slide was scanned under ×20 magnification (Ventana iScan), the percentage of positively stained cells was calculated using image analysis software (Ventana Virtuoso, ver. 5.6).

**Statistical analysis**

Categorical variables were analyzed using t tests and chi-square tests. Disease-free survival (DFS) and overall survival (OS) were defined as the duration from pathologic diagnosis to recurrence/progression and death, respectively. DFS and OS were plotted using the Kaplan-Meier method. A log-rank test was used to evaluate differences in survival. Multivariate analyses were performed to assess the prognostic factors for survival using a Cox proportional hazards regression model.

Table 1. Clinicopathologic features of HER2-positive pure mucinous carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Age (yr)</th>
<th>Sex</th>
<th>Procedure</th>
<th>Mass size (mm)</th>
<th>T category</th>
<th>No. of positive LNs</th>
<th>N category</th>
<th>Nuclear grade</th>
<th>Histologic grade</th>
<th>ER</th>
<th>PR</th>
<th>Type A/B</th>
<th>Structure</th>
<th>Recurrence</th>
<th>Follow-up</th>
<th>Trastuzumab</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>30.0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>B SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>B None</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A None</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>B SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>70.0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>A MP/SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A None</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>B SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>65/80a</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A MP/SRC</td>
<td>Local recurrence</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>38.0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>NA None</td>
<td>Metastasis</td>
<td>DOC</td>
<td>ND</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A MP</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>55/0a</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>NAa</td>
<td>NAa</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>B SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>Done(^2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>85/70a</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A None</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>Done(^3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>90/80a</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>Done(^3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>Done</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>30/10a</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>NA NA</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>Done</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A MP</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>Done</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>Done</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>40.0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>A SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>Done</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>41.0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>B SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>Done</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>II</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A SRC</td>
<td>NED</td>
<td>Done</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>16/19a</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>III</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>A MP</td>
<td>Metastasis</td>
<td>DOC</td>
<td>Done</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** For cases with neoadjuvant chemotherapy, tumor size before/after treatment were recorded; *In this patient, lymph node metastasis was suspected in radiologic images, but pathologic confirmation was not performed due to pathologic complete response; †Used trastuzumab for neoadjuvant chemotherapy.

**HER2, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2; ER, estrogen receptor; PR, progesterone receptor; F, female; T, total mastectomy; A, axillary lymph node dissection; SRC, signet ring cells; NED, no evidence of disease; ND, not done; B, breast conserving surgery; S, sentinel lymph node biopsy; MP, micropapillary; DOC, died of disease; NA, not applicable; DOC, died of other cause.

\(^{a}\)For cases with neoadjuvant chemotherapy, tumor size before/after treatment were recorded; \(^{b}\)In this patient, lymph node metastasis was suspected in radiologic images, but pathologic confirmation was not performed due to pathologic complete response; \(^{c}\)Used trastuzumab for neoadjuvant chemotherapy.
hazards model. A p-value less than .05 was considered statistically significant. All statistical analyses were performed using SPSS software ver. 25.0 (IBM Corp., Armonk, NY, USA).

Ethics statement
This study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of Samsung Medical Center, and the need for informed consent was waived (IRB No. 2019-08-051).

RESULTS

Basic characteristics of HER2-positive pure mucinous carcinoma

Basic clinicopathologic characteristics are summarized in Table 1. Twenty-one HER2-positive cases were included, accounting for 4.8% of 438 PMC. Seventeen cases were HER2 IHC 3+, and the remaining four cases showed equivocal (2+) staining, of which HER2 amplification were confirmed using SISH. All 21 patients were female, and their mean age was 45 years. Ten patients underwent total mastectomy, and 11 patients underwent conserving surgery. Axillary lymph node dissection was performed in 10 cases, and sentinel node biopsy alone was performed in the remaining 11 cases. Six patients received neoadjuvant chemotherapy, and their T category before treatment was cT1 in one case, cT2 in one case, and cT3 in four cases. Among them, three patients (cases Nos. 11, 12, and 13) received neoadjuvant chemotherapy including trastuzumab. One patient showed pathologic complete response (case No. 11). The T category of the remaining 15 patients was pT1 in 10 cases, pT2 in four cases, and pT3 in one case. Nodal metastasis was present in seven cases (35.0%). Eleven patients received trastuzumab treatment after surgery. Axillary lymph node dissection was performed in 10 cases, and sentinel node biopsy alone was performed in the remaining 11 cases. Six patients received neoadjuvant chemotherapy, and their T category before treatment was cT1 in one case, cT2 in one case, and cT3 in four cases. Among them, three patients (cases Nos. 11, 12, and 13) received neoadjuvant chemotherapy including trastuzumab. One patient showed pathologic complete response (case No. 11). The T category of the remaining 15 patients was pT1 in 10 cases, pT2 in four cases, and pT3 in one case. Nodal metastasis was present in seven cases (35.0%). Eleven patients received trastuzumab treatment after surgery. Distant metastasis occurred in two patients (9.5%) (lung and brain, one; skin and lung, one each), and local recurrence occurred in one patient (4.8%). Distant metastasis and local recurrence occurred in two of nine patients without trastuzumab treatment (22.2%) and one of 11 patients with trastuzumab treatment (9.1%) (p = .421).

Microscopic findings of HER2-positive pure mucinous carcinoma

Nuclear grade was two in 10 cases (50.0%) and three in 10 cases (50.0%). Histologic grade was II in 10 cases (50.0%) and III in 10 cases (50.0%) (Fig. 1C). EIC was present in 10 cases (50.0%). LVI was present in five cases (25%). Thirteen cases (68.4%) were classified as type A, and six cases (31.6%) were classified as type B. Signet ring cells were present in 12 cases (60.0%) (Fig. 1D). In two cases, the tumor was comprised of >90% of signet ring cells. The micropapillary component was present in five cases (25.0%) (Fig. 1E). ER was positive in 14 cases (66.7%) and negative in seven cases (33.3%) (Fig. 1F). PR was positive in 15 cases (71.4%) and negative in six cases (28.6%).

Comparison of clinicopathologic characteristics between HER2-positive and HER2-negative pure mucinous carcinoma

Clinicopathologic characteristics of HER2-positive and HER2-negative PMC are summarized in Table 2. Average follow-up duration was 69 months (range, 1 to 227 months). Mean age was younger in the HER2-positive group without statistical significance (p = .073). Tumor size was larger (p < .001) and axillary lymph node metastasis was more common in the HER2-positive group (p = .009). Nuclear and histologic grades were higher in the HER2-positive group than in the HER2-negative group (p < .001 and p < .001). Distribution of tumor type (mucinous type A or B) was similar in the two groups (p = .940). The micropapillary pattern was more frequent in HER2-negative PMC (p = .012), whereas signet ring cells were frequently observed in the HER2-positive PMC (p < .001). In HER2-positive PMC, EIC was more common (50.0% vs. 21.9%, p = .011), and LVI tended to occur more frequently without statistical significance (25.0% vs. 12.2, p = .158). ER was negative in seven HER2-positive PMC (35.3%), while there were only five HER2-negative PMC (1.2%) (p < .001). PR was negative in six cases of HER2-positive PMC (28.6%); in contrast, PR was negative in 30 cases of HER2-negative PMC (7.2%) (p = .005). HER2-positive PMC cases showed a more frequent high Ki-67 labeling index (≥20%) (p = .006).

Prognosis of pure mucinous carcinoma

Recurrence or distant metastasis occurred in 16 cases (3.7%), and 17 deaths were observed. In three cases, the cause of death was breast cancer (HER2-negative PMC, two cases; HER2-positive PMC, one case). Nuclear and histologic grades, T category, lymph node status, LVI, and HER2 status were significantly associated with DFS in univariate analysis using a log-rank test (Table 3). The 10-year DFS was significantly lower in HER2-positive PMC (DFS, 78.1% vs 93.9%, p = .001) (Fig. 2). In multivariate analysis, only lymph node status and HER2 positivity were significantly associated with DFS (relative risk [RR], 4.818; p = .005 and RR, 7.822; p = .002) (Table 4). In univariate analysis of OS, lymph node status and HER2 positivity had significance. In multivariate analysis, only lymph node status retained significance (RR, 11.72; p = .045) (Table 4).
DISCUSSION

PMC is a rare subtype of breast cancer characterized by extracellular mucin pools with floating tumor cells [1]. Typical PMC belongs to the luminal A molecular subtype; most PMC is low grade, positive for ER and/or PR, and negative for HER2 [1-4]. PMC generally shows favorable prognosis. However, some studies reported that ER/PR negativity and high grade are associated with a poor prognosis in PMC [11,12].

While HER2 amplification occurs in 15%-20% of invasive...
breast cancer [5], it is very rare in PMC and is reported to occur in 2.6%–9% of cases [4,6-8]. In our cohort, 4.8% of PMC showed HER2 positivity, consistent with previous studies. HER2-positive breast cancer is typically poorly differentiated and high grade, has high rates of cell proliferation and lymph node involvement, and is relatively resistant to certain types of chemotherapy [13]. Clinicopathologic characteristics of HER2-positive PMC have not been well investigated because of its very low incidence. This study was the first to describe clinicopathologic features of HER2-positive PMC in a large series. HER2-positive PMC showed higher nuclear and histologic grades, more frequent axillary lymph node metastasis, and a more advanced stage at the time of diagnosis than HER2-negative PMC. HER2 status was significantly associated with DFS in multivariate and univariate analyses. However, this would have to be further validated because of the few events in our series. Recently, Gwark et al. [14] also reported worse prognosis of HER2-positive PMC among PMC cases that were hormone receptor positive and node negative with a tumor size ≥ 3 cm.

Clinically, HER2-positive PMC has important implications for patient management. Although there was no difference in recurrence or survival according to trastuzumab treatment in this study, the effects of anti-HER2 agents including trastuzumab on survival of HER2-positive breast cancers are well known [5]. Our result might be due to the limited number of cases. Besides, we experienced a case of HER2-positive PMC with pathologic complete response after neoadjuvant chemotherapy with trastuzumab and pertuzumab (case No. 11) [15]. Gwark et al. [14] also reported better prognosis of patients treated with trastuzumab than without trastuzumab among HER2-positive hormone receptor-positive PMC. In our study population, only 11 patients received trastuzumab as either neoadjuvant or adjuvant treatment. None of the patients who were initially diagnosed before 2009 received trastuzumab, whereas all but three patients who were diagnosed after 2009 received trastuzumab treatment. Tumors of two patients were too small (0.4 cm and 0.45 cm), and in one patient, trastuzumab use was uncheckable because of her referral to an outside hospital. Clinicians should be aware of HER2-positive PMC and manage according to immunophenotype of

![Fig. 2. Kaplan-Meier plots for disease-free survival of pure mucinous carcinoma according to human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) status.](image-url)

Table 4. Multivariate analysis of DFS and OS using the Cox proportion hazard model in pure mucinous carcinoma

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>DFS</th>
<th>OS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multivariate RR (95% CI)</td>
<td>p-value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T category</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>.535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.069 (0.275–4.156)</td>
<td>.924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2.892 (0.411–20.324)</td>
<td>.286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Node metastasis</td>
<td>4.818 (1.609–14.424)</td>
<td>.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuclear grade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>.629</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2.532 (0.345–18.608)</td>
<td>.361</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>5.113 (0.046–565.687)</td>
<td>.497</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histologic grade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>.977</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>1.091 (0.207–5.742)</td>
<td>.918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>0.731 (0.008–66.579)</td>
<td>.892</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HER2</td>
<td>7.822 (2.130–28.722)</td>
<td>.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVI</td>
<td>2.355 (0.559–9.928)</td>
<td>.243</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DFS, disease-free survival; OS, overall survival; RR, relative risk; CI, confidence interval; HER2, human epidermal growth factor receptor 2; LVI, lymphovascular invasion.
HER2-positive pure mucinous carcinoma  •  101

PMCs, as in usual breast cancers.

Previous case reports of our group and others reported signet ring cell components in HER2-positive PMC [15-17]. Micropapillary features have been suggested to have an association with HER2 positivity [18]. Thus, we evaluated micropapilla and signet ring cells in PMC. Interestingly, the presence of signet ring cells was significantly associated with HER2 positivity in PMC, with 12/20 cases showing signet ring cells (60.0%). In contrast, 48 HER2-negative PMC patients (11.5%) showed signet ring cell differentiation. Extracellular mucin pools are a characteristic feature of PMC, and intracellular accumulation of mucin is a feature of signet ring cells. Coexistence of extracellular and intracellular mucin with HER2 positivity remains unexplained. Although carcinomas with signet ring cell differentiation are not a distinct disease entity in the World Health Organization classification [1], our result suggests signet ring cell differentiation may represent a specific histologic feature associated with HER2 positivity in PMC [15-17]. Micropapillary features were quite common in overall PMC (53.8%) and were more frequently observed in HER2-negative PMCs than in HER2-positive PMCs. The prognostic significance of micropapillary features in PMC remains controversial. Some studies suggested more aggressive behavior of PMC with micropapillary features [19], whereas others showed no association [20]. Recently, Xu et al. [21] reported that micropapillary features are common in PMC (80%), and micropapillary features with low nuclear grade are associated with indolent biologic behavior. This might explain the discordant results of previous studies and frequent presence of micropapillary features in HER2-negative PMC in our study.

Typical PMC is a luminal A type breast cancer with low nuclear grade, high ER expression, and HER2 negativity. However, as shown in this study, there is a minor proportion of HER2-positive PMCs, which showed aggressive histologic and clinical features, including high nuclear grade, high histologic grade, large tumor size, a frequent extensive intraductal component, and lymph node metastasis. Signet ring cells were also significantly associated with HER2-positive PMC. Finally, HER2 positivity in PMC was significantly associated with poor DFS in univariate and multivariate analyses. Consideration of HER2 positivity in PMC is important for treatment decisions regarding the use of HER2 target therapy.

ORCID

Yunjeong Jang: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-5171-3658
Hera Jung: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4595-3836
Emad Alsharif: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-6433-4697
Seok Jin Nam: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-1072-8954
Seok Won Kim: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-6130-7570
Jeong Eon Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-0037-2456
Yeon Hee Park: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4156-9212
Eun Yoon Cho: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-5849-3600
Soo Youn Cho: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-9714-7575

Author Contributions
Conceptualization: SYC, EYC, JEL.
Data Curation: YJ.
Formal analysis: YJ, SYC.
Investigation: YJ, HJ, HNK, YS, EA, SJN, SWK, JEL, YHP.
Project administration: YJ, YS.
Supervision: SYC, EYC.
Writing—original draft: YJ, SYC.
Writing—review & editing: YJ, SYC, EYC.

Conflicts of Interest
The authors declare that they have no potential conflicts of interest.

Funding
No funding to declare.

REFERENCES

Expression of female sex hormone receptors and its relation to clinicopathological characteristics and prognosis of lung adenocarcinoma

Jin Hwan Lee, Han Kyeon Kim, Bong Kyung Shin
Department of Pathology, Korea University Guro Hospital, Korea University College of Medicine, Seoul, Korea

Background: Adenocarcinoma (ADC) of the lung exhibits different clinicopathological characteristics in men and women. Recent studies have suggested that these differences originate from the expression of female sex hormone receptors in tumor cells. The aim of the present study was to evaluate the immunohistochemical expression of female sex hormone receptors in lung ADC and determine the expression patterns in patients with different clinicopathological characteristics. Methods: A total of 84 patients with lung ADC who underwent surgical resection and/or core biopsy were recruited for the present study. Immunohistochemical staining was performed for estrogen receptor α (ERα), estrogen receptor β (ERβ), progesterone receptor (PR), epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), EGFR E746-A750 del, and EGFR L858R using tissue microarray. Results: A total of 39 (46.4%) ERα-positive, 71 (84.5%) ERβ-positive, and 46 (54.8%) PR-positive lung ADCs were identified. In addition, there were 81 (96.4%) EGFR-positive, 14 (16.7%) EGFR E746-A750 del-positive, and 34 (40.5%) EGFR L858R-positive cases. The expression of female sex hormone receptors was not significantly different in clinicopathologically different subsets of lung ADC. Conclusions: Expression of female sex hormone receptors is not associated with the prognosis and clinicopathological characteristics of patients with lung ADC.

Key Words: Adenocarcinoma of lung; Receptors, estrogen; ERα; ERβ; Receptors, progesterone; Prognosis

Received: August 2, 2019 Revised: September 22, 2019 Accepted: October 12, 2019
Corresponding Author: Bong Kyung Shin, MD, PhD, Department of Pathology, Korea University Guro Hospital, Korea University College of Medicine, 148 Gurodong-ro, Guro-gu, Seoul 08308, Korea
Tel: +82-2-2626-1472, Fax: +82-2-2626-1486, E-mail: tabrego@korea.ac.kr

Lung cancer is a difficult malignancy to treat and has a high mortality rate worldwide [1]. Smoking was thought to be a major cause of lung cancer, but a large number of lung cancer cases have occurred regardless of smoking status, especially adenocarcinoma (ADC) in women [2,3]. As female sex hormones were demonstrated to be involved in the differentiation and maturation of fetal lung tissue [4], it was suggested that they may also be involved in the development and tissue differentiation of lung cancer. The risk of lung ADC is lower in women with menopause at a relatively young age, and a significant positive correlation has been identified between hormone replacement therapy and the incidence of lung ADC [5,6], suggesting that female sex hormones may serve certain roles in the development of lung ADC. Mollerup et al. [7] demonstrated that estrogen receptor (ER) gene expression was significantly increased in the normal lung tissue of patients with non-small cell lung cancer and non-small cell lung cancer cell lines; the effects of estrogen on cell proliferation were tissue- and cell type-specific. These results suggested a possible role of ERs in lung carcinogenesis [7].

Studies on the prognostic effects of female sex hormone receptor expression on lung cancer have exhibited inconsistent results. In a study conducted by Kawai et al. [8], patients with non-small cell lung cancer with upregulation of estrogen receptor α (ERα) and downregulation of estrogen receptor β (ERβ) exhibited poor prognoses. Stabile et al. [9] demonstrated that high expression of ERβ and low expression of progesterone receptor (PR) were associated with rapid progression of lung cancer. Hsu et al. [10] also reported that the prognosis of patients with ERβ-positive lung ADC was poor. By contrast, studies by Schwartz et al. [11] and Skov et al. [12] demonstrated that the expression of ERβ was associated with good prognosis in non-small cell lung cancer.

The aim of the present study was to analyze the association...
between female sex hormone receptor expression and clinicopathological characteristics of lung ADC and to determine the clinical significance of female sex hormone receptors and their potential use as prognostic factors.

**MATERIALS AND METHODS**

Patients diagnosed with lung ADC at Korea University Guro Hospital (Seoul, Korea) between 2010 and 2012 and treated or followed for > 1 month were included in this study, with the exception of those with a history of cancer or chemotherapy. Hematoxylin and eosin (H&E)-stained glass slides, paraffin tissue blocks, and medical records from 84 patients who underwent surgical resection or biopsy were collected. The medical records included clinical information such as sex, age, smoking history, menopause status, disease relapse, death, and follow-up period, as well as pathological information such as tumor size, stage, histological classification, invasion of vessels/lymph nodes/nerves, and epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) gene mutation. Peptide nucleic acid clamping quantitative polymerase chain reaction results. All of the glass slides, paraffin blocks, and clinicopathological information were provided by the Korea University Guro Hospital Biobank, which is a member of the Korea Biobank Network.

In the collected paraffin blocks, representative cancer areas were identified by contrasting with H&E-stained glass slides, and one to three 2-mm cores were obtained and transferred to empty paraffin blocks to construct tissue microarray (TMA) blocks. The TMAs were sectioned in 4-µm slices, mounted on glass slides, and stained with H&E. They were also stained immunohistochemically using a Bond-III automatic stainer (Ventana Medical Systems, Inc.), anti-ERα (Ready-To-Use [RTU], clone SP1, Ventana Medical Systems, Inc.), anti-ERβ (1:100, clone 14C8, Abcam, Cambridge, UK), anti-PR (RTU, clone 1E2, Ventana Medical Systems, Inc.), anti–androgen receptor (AR; 1:50, clone AR27, Leica Biosystems Nussloch GmbH, Wetzlar, Germany) or a Bench-Mark ULTRA automatic stainer (Ventana Medical Systems, Inc., Tucson, AZ, USA). The antibodies used were as follows: anti-ERα (Ready-To-Use [RTU], clone SP1, Ventana Medical Systems, Inc.), anti-ERβ (1:100, clone 14C8, Abcam, Cambridge, UK), anti-PR (RTU, clone 1E2, Ventana Medical Systems, Inc.), anti–androgen receptor (AR; 1:50, clone AR27, Leica Biosystems Nussloch GmbH), anti-EGFR (RTU, clone 3C6, Ventana Medical Systems, Inc.), anti–EGFR E746-A750 del (RTU, clone SP111, Ventana Medical Systems, Inc.), and anti–EGFR L858R (RTU, clone SP125, Ventana Medical Systems, Inc.).

The results of the immunohistochemical (IHC) staining were assessed independently by two pathologists (J.H.L. and B.K.S.) blinded to clinicopathological information, and the discrepancies were resolved by discussion. ERα, ERβ, and PR staining results were interpreted according to the Allred scoring method, which is a commonly used tool for the determination of female sex hormone receptors in breast cancer, and the staining was considered positive when tumor cell nuclei appeared brown [13]. The proportion of stained cells was scored as follows: 0, no positive cells; 1, < 1% positive cells; 2, 1%–10% positive cells; 3, 11%–33% positive cells; 4, 34%–66% positive cells; and 5, 100% positive cells. The staining intensity was scored as follows: 0, cell nuclei were not stained; 1, weakly stained; 2, moderately stained; and 3, intensely stained [13]. Subsequently, the sum of the two scores was calculated, and tissue samples with score > 2 were considered positive for ERα, ERβ, and/or PR expression. For AR, cell nuclear staining was considered positive regardless of the intensity of staining. For EGFR, EGFR E746-A750 del, and EGFR L858R, cell membrane staining was considered positive regardless of the intensity of staining [14].

Pearson’s chi-square test and Fisher exact test were used to evaluate the association between IHC staining and patient clinicopathological characteristics. Overall survival (OS) was defined as the period between the date of first diagnosis and the date of death or the last follow-up. Progression-free survival (PFS) was defined as the period between the date of first diagnosis and the date when recurrence or progression of lung ADC was confirmed or the last follow-up. A Kaplan-Meier survival curve was used for survival analysis, and the log-rank test was used to determine significant differences. Univariate and multivariate analyses of each factor were performed using the Cox proportional hazards model, and the results were considered statistically significant when the p-value was < 0.05. The Windows version of IBM SPSS ver. 24.0 (IBM Corp., Armonk, NY, USA) was used for statistical analysis.

**Ethics statement**

This study was approved by the Institutional Review Board of Korea University Guro Hospital (approval No. 2018GR0387), and all of the glass slides, paraffin blocks, and clinicopathological information were provided by the Korea University Guro Hospital Biobank, who had collected patients' samples and information with their informed consents.

**RESULTS**

The detailed clinicopathological information of the study patients is presented in Table 1. The male-to-female ratio was 43:41; 31 patients had a history of smoking. Of the 41 female patients, 32 were in menopause. According to the 8th edition
of the American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) cancer staging manual, stage I or II cancer was identified in 54 patients, whereas advanced stage III or IV cancer was identified in 30 patients. Histological pattern evaluation revealed an acinar pattern in 52 patients, a papillary pattern in 15 patients, a solid pattern in 10 patients, a lepidic pattern in six patients, and a mucinous pattern in one patient. By July 2018, signs of disease recurrence or progression were observed in 36 patients, among which 32 succumbed to disease.

The results of the IHC staining according to clinicopathological features are presented in Table 2. Among the 84 cases, positive staining for ERα, ERβ, and PR was identified in 39, 71, and 46 cases, respectively. For ERα and PR, the staining was mainly restricted to tumor cell nuclei, whereas for ERβ, the staining was distributed in the nucleus and the cytoplasm. Microscopic images of the representative hormone receptor staining are presented in Fig. 1. The expression of ERβ was more frequent in patients ≥ 65 years compared with patients < 65 years (p = .027), whereas that of PR was only weakly associated with old age and sex (p = .051 and p = .051, respectively). Sex, smoking history, tumor stage, and tumor size were not significantly associated with the expression of sex hormone receptors, nor did the histological growth pattern exhibit any association with the expression of sex hormone receptors (ERα, p = .566; ERβ, p = .577; PR, p = .857).

Among the 84 cases, positive staining for AR was identified in only one patient, who was a 64-year-old male never-smoker. The associations between the expression of AR and other clinicopathological or molecular characteristics were not further analyzed due to the small number of positive cases.

**Table 1.** Clinicopathological characteristics of patients studied for female sex hormones receptor expression

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>No. (%) (n = 84)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>43 (51.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>41 (48.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (yr)</td>
<td>63.9 ± 8.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size (cm)</td>
<td>3.1 ± 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I/II</td>
<td>54 (64.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III/IV</td>
<td>30 (35.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never</td>
<td>53 (63.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ever</td>
<td>31 (36.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menopause</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre</td>
<td>9 (22.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post</td>
<td>32 (78.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histologic pattern</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acinar</td>
<td>52 (61.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papillary</td>
<td>15 (17.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid</td>
<td>10 (11.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lepidic</td>
<td>6 (7.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mucinous</td>
<td>1 (1.2)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2.** The results of IHC staining and clinicopathological characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>No. (n = 84)</th>
<th>ERα positive (%)</th>
<th>ERβ positive (%)</th>
<th>PR positive (%)</th>
<th>EGFR 19 positive (%)</th>
<th>EGFR 21 positive (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Age (yr)</td>
<td>.373</td>
<td>.027</td>
<td>.051</td>
<td>.097</td>
<td>.004</td>
<td>&gt; .99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 65</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>17 (41.5)</td>
<td>31 (75.6)</td>
<td>18 (43.9)</td>
<td>4 (9.8)</td>
<td>23 (56.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 65</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>22 (51.2)</td>
<td>40 (93.0)</td>
<td>28 (65.1)</td>
<td>10 (23.3)</td>
<td>11 (25.6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex</td>
<td>.184</td>
<td>.109</td>
<td>.051</td>
<td>.283</td>
<td>&lt; .001</td>
<td>&gt; .99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>23 (53.5)</td>
<td>39 (90.7)</td>
<td>28 (65.1)</td>
<td>9 (20.9)</td>
<td>9 (20.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>16 (39.0)</td>
<td>32 (78.0)</td>
<td>18 (43.9)</td>
<td>5 (12.2)</td>
<td>25 (61.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking</td>
<td>.237</td>
<td>.119</td>
<td>.358</td>
<td>.479</td>
<td>.036</td>
<td>.552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Never</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>22 (41.5)</td>
<td>42 (79.2)</td>
<td>27 (50.9)</td>
<td>10 (18.9)</td>
<td>26 (49.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ever</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>17 (54.8)</td>
<td>29 (93.5)</td>
<td>19 (61.3)</td>
<td>4 (12.9)</td>
<td>8 (25.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage</td>
<td>.161</td>
<td>&gt; .99</td>
<td>.102</td>
<td>&gt; .99</td>
<td>.145</td>
<td>.549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-II</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>22 (40.7)</td>
<td>46 (85.2)</td>
<td>26 (48.1)</td>
<td>9 (16.7)</td>
<td>25 (46.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III-IV</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>17 (56.7)</td>
<td>25 (83.3)</td>
<td>20 (66.7)</td>
<td>5 (16.7)</td>
<td>9 (30.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size (cm)</td>
<td>.778</td>
<td>.059</td>
<td>.335</td>
<td>.433</td>
<td>.288</td>
<td>&gt; .99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 3</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>22 (47.8)</td>
<td>42 (91.3)</td>
<td>23 (50.0)</td>
<td>9 (19.6)</td>
<td>21 (45.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥ 3</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>17 (44.7)</td>
<td>29 (76.3)</td>
<td>23 (60.5)</td>
<td>5 (13.2)</td>
<td>13 (34.2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>3 (33.3)</td>
<td>7 (77.8)</td>
<td>4 (44.4)</td>
<td>1 (11.1)</td>
<td>6 (66.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>13 (40.6)</td>
<td>25 (78.1)</td>
<td>14 (43.8)</td>
<td>4 (12.5)</td>
<td>19 (59.4)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Statistically significant (p < .05).

IHC, immunohistochemical; ER, estrogen receptor; PR, progesterone receptor; EGFR, epidermal growth factor receptor; EGFR 19, EGFR 746-A750 del; EGFR 21, EGFR 746-L858R.
Fig. 1. Representative results of immunohistochemical staining. (A) Nuclear staining for estrogen receptor α. (B) Nuclear staining for estrogen receptor β. (C) Nuclear staining for progesterone receptor.

Table 3. Pearson correlation coefficient between the results of IHC staining and EGFR mutation PNA clamping real-time PCR study

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ERα</th>
<th>ERβ</th>
<th>PR</th>
<th>EGFR 19del mutation</th>
<th>EGFR 20 ins mutation</th>
<th>EGFR L858R mutation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ERα</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERβ</td>
<td>0.398*</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td>0.319*</td>
<td>0.405*</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR 19del mutation</td>
<td>-0.103</td>
<td>-0.198</td>
<td>0.013</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR 20 ins mutation</td>
<td>-0.227</td>
<td>-0.086</td>
<td>-0.245</td>
<td>0.011</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR L858R mutation</td>
<td>-0.257</td>
<td>-0.049</td>
<td>-0.068</td>
<td>-0.499*</td>
<td>-0.185</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IHC, immunohistochemical; EGFR, epidermal growth factor receptor; PNA, peptide nucleic acid; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; ER, estrogen receptor; PR, progesterone receptor.
*Statistically significant (p < .05).

IHC staining of EGFR, EGFR E746-A750 del, and EGFR L858R demonstrated that of the 84 cases, 81, 14, and 34 cases were positive for each marker, respectively. No statistically significant associations were identified with clinicopathological features in patients with EGFR- or EGFR E746-A750 del–positive tumors. However, EGFR L858R–positive tumors were identified to be associated with a younger age (<65 years vs. ≥65 years, p = .004) and more frequent in women compared with men (p < .001) and in patients without any smoking history compared with smokers (p = .036) (Table 2).

The expression levels of female sex hormone receptors were associated with one another (ERα and ERβ, p < .001; ERα and PR, p = .003; ERβ and PR; p < .001).

Molecular analysis of EGFR mutation status was performed in 51 patients, among which the EGFR 19 del mutation was identified in 16 cases (31.4%), the EGFR 20 insertion mutation in three cases (5.9%), concurrent EGFR 19 del mutation and EGFR 20 insertion in one case (2.0%), and the EGFR L858R mutation in 18 cases (35.3%). The IHC female sex hormone receptor expression and molecular EGFR mutation results appeared to be negatively associated but were not statistically significant (Table 3).

Kaplan-Meier survival curves and the log-rank test were used to analyze the OS and PFS of the patients. The positive or negative staining of ERα was not significantly associated with OS or PFS. The staining of ERβ and PR also did not impact survival. In addition, the results of IHC staining associated with EGFR exhibited no significant differences in survival. Patients with tumors expressing ERα or ERβ were subdivided into groups according to age, sex, and tumor stage; in the subgroup of patients aged ≥65 years, the ERα-positive group exhibited significantly worse PFS and OS compared with the ERα-negative group (Fig. 2).

The results of the univariate analysis demonstrated that OS was significantly associated with sex, tumor stage, and smoking history, whereas PFS was associated with tumor size, stage, smoking history, and menopause status. However, in the multivariate analysis, only sex and tumor stage were significantly associated with OS, and only tumor size was associated with PFS (Table 4). In the subgroup of patients aged ≥65 years, ERα expression was associated with PFS and OS in the univariate analysis (p = .046 and p = .031, respectively), but not in the multivariate analysis (p = .522 and p = .475, respectively) (Table 5).

**DISCUSSION**

The present study investigated the association of female sex hormone receptor expression with clinicopathological features and prognosis in lung ADC. The results demonstrated an association between poor prognosis and ERα expression in the Ka-
ERα, ERβ, and PR in lung adenocarcinoma

Fig. 2. Kaplan-Meier plots of progression-free survival (PFS) and overall survival (OS) in the age subgroups. (A) Estrogen receptor α (ERα) expression was associated with poor PFS in the age ≥ 65 years subgroup. (B) ERα expression was associated with poor OS in the age ≥ 65 years subgroup. (C) ERα expression was not associated with PFS in the age < 65 years subgroup. (D) ERα expression was not associated with OS in the age < 65 years subgroup.

Table 4. Cox proportional hazard regression model survival analysis in progression-free survival and overall survival

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Progression-free survival</th>
<th>Overall survival</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Univariate analysis</td>
<td>Multivariate analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HR (95% CI) p-value</td>
<td>HR (95% CI) p-value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (≥ 65 yr)</td>
<td>0.717 (0.400–1.287) .265</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female sex</td>
<td>0.569 (0.317–1.021) .059</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size (≥ 3 cm)</td>
<td>4.006 (2.167–7.405) .001a</td>
<td>5.447 (1.664–17.837) .005b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage (III, IV)</td>
<td>3.625 (1.969–6.675) .001a</td>
<td>1.049 (0.329–3.349) .905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking</td>
<td>1.904 (1.047–3.462) .035a</td>
<td>0.680 (0.113–4.091) .673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Menopause (n = 41)</td>
<td>0.304 (0.114–0.813) .018a</td>
<td>0.803 (0.251–2.563) .711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERα</td>
<td>0.996 (0.553–1.795) .990</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERβ</td>
<td>0.642 (0.318–1.294) .215</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td>0.793 (0.444–1.415) .432</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR E746-A750 del</td>
<td>0.933 (0.435–2.004) .860</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR L858R</td>
<td>1.137 (0.630–2.050) .670</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HR, hazard ratio; CI, confidence interval; ER, estrogen receptor; PR, progesterone receptor; EGFR, epidermal growth factor receptor.

*Statistically significant in univariate analysis (p < .05); **Statistically significant in multivariate analysis (p < .05).
In normal lung tissue, ERα is highly expressed in alveolar and bronchial epithelial cells and involved in the maintenance of the extracellular matrix. In addition, studies using ERβ-knockout mice have reported hypoxia in the mice caused by a decrease in alveolar formation and surfactant secretion [15]. ERs contribute to intracellular signaling [16]. The complex of estrogen and ER directly acts on the estrogen response element in the nucleus and promotes gene expression through the activation of the RAS/RAF signaling pathway or the phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K)/Akt signaling pathway [17].

Studies on the significance of ERs as risk and/or prognostic factors of lung ADC have produced inconsistent results. Certain studies reported that ERα expression in the cytoplasm was associated with poor prognosis [8,18]. A previous study reported that ERα expression in tumor cell nuclei was associated with good prognosis [19], whereas another study identified an association with poor prognosis [20]. Studies on the expression of ERβ also produced variable and inconsistent results with different prognosis depending on the sex of the patients and the site of expression in tumor cells [8,12,21,22].

The expression patterns and rates of ERs have also been inconsistent in previous studies. The expression rate of ERα has been reported as ranging from 0%–80% and that of ERβ as ranging from 9%–98% [23]; these wide ranges may have been due to the various types of antibodies used for evaluation. Antibodies against ERα include mouse monoclonal antibodies 1D5 targeting the amino-terminal domain, 6F11 recognizing the full-length receptor, and rabbit monoclonal antibodies SP1 and HC20, both recognizing the carboxy-terminal domain. A study on ERα expression in lung ADC reported a positive rate of 7.6% with 1D5, 14.1% with 6F11, and 27% with SP1, respectively [24]. In another study, the HC20 antibody exhibited a similar positive rate to that of 1D5 [23]. Generally, antibodies targeting the amino terminal domain exhibit a positive rate of 0%–40% [11,25], those against the carboxyl terminal domain exhibit a positive rate of 36%–79% [22,26], and those recognizing the full-length receptor exhibit a positive rate of 0%–80% [11,27,28]. Antibodies against ERβ also have various types recognizing full-length receptor and splicing variants; a previous study reported that those targeting the amino-terminal exhibited a positive rate of 49%, and the antibody against the carboxyl-terminal exhibited a positive rate of 48%–51%, demonstrating relatively consistent expression, regardless of the target domain, compared with the ERα antibodies [23]. The absence of consensus on the criteria for “positivity” in IHC evaluation may also have caused the inconsistent results. Although most of the previous studies used both the proportion of stained cells and the staining intensity, the specific methods were inconsistent.

In addition, the criteria for determining the positive results were divided into nuclear and cytoplasmic staining in certain studies, which led to further confusion and discrepancy.

Expression of PR has been demonstrated to increase the se-

Table 5. Cox proportional hazard regression model survival analysis in progression-free survival and overall survival with the age over 65 subgroup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Progression-free survival</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>Overall survival</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Univariate analysis</td>
<td>Multivariate analysis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Univariate analysis</td>
<td>Multivariate analysis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HR (95% CI)</td>
<td>p-value</td>
<td>HR (95% CI)</td>
<td>p-value</td>
<td>HR (95% CI)</td>
<td>p-value</td>
<td>HR (95% CI)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female sex</td>
<td>0.341 (0.123–0.947)</td>
<td>.039*</td>
<td>0.494 (0.171–1.424)</td>
<td>.192</td>
<td>0.159 (0.035–0.718)</td>
<td>.017*</td>
<td>0.132 (0.029–0.688)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Size (≥ 3 cm)</td>
<td>6.170 (2.196–17.333)</td>
<td>.001*</td>
<td>2.662 (0.725–9.777)</td>
<td>.140</td>
<td>3.208 (1.065–9.660)</td>
<td>.038*</td>
<td>0.911 (0.212–3.915)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage (III, IV)</td>
<td>6.504 (2.403–17.609)</td>
<td>&lt; .001*</td>
<td>2.822 (0.825–9.659)</td>
<td>.008</td>
<td>4.684 (1.521–14.427)</td>
<td>.007*</td>
<td>5.080 (0.926–27.874)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking</td>
<td>2.245 (0.906–5.560)</td>
<td>.081</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3.393 (1.130–10.190)</td>
<td>.029*</td>
<td>2.379 (0.655–8.641)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERα</td>
<td>2.605 (1.017–6.767)</td>
<td>.046*</td>
<td>1.383 (0.513–3.733)</td>
<td>.522</td>
<td>3.648 (1.126–11.797)</td>
<td>.031*</td>
<td>1.756 (0.374–8.243)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERβ</td>
<td>2.018 (0.267–15.242)</td>
<td>.496</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>24.255 (0.006–104217.826)</td>
<td>.455</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td>1.819 (0.687–4.814)</td>
<td>.228</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2.379 (0.655–8.641)</td>
<td>.188</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR L858R</td>
<td>0.965 (0.349–2.665)</td>
<td>.945</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1.257 (0.384–4.118)</td>
<td>.706</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EGFR T790M</td>
<td>1.159 (0.416–3.224)</td>
<td>.778</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.982 (0.270–3.574)</td>
<td>.979</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HR, hazard ratio; CI, confidence interval; ER, estrogen receptor; PR, progesterone receptor; EGFR, epidermal growth factor receptor.

*Statistically significant in univariate analysis (p < .05); *Statistically significant in multivariate analysis (p < .05).
cretion of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), which promotes tumor angiogenesis and contributes to tumorigenesis [29,30]. A previous study in which ER and PR were concurrently administered to lung cancer cell lines revealed that lung tumor cells can produce angiogenically active VEGF. As these were inhibited by anti-progesterone treatment, the authors concluded that these cancer-promoting effects were mediated by progesterone [30]. In chemically-induced lung ADCs in mice, the expression levels of PR and EGFR were associated with each other, as well as with tumor progression [31]. However, other studies evaluating the association among the expression of PR, tumori-
genesis, and prognosis of lung ADC demonstrated that PR expression was present in 8%–63% of tumors and exhibited no significant association with disease prognosis [19,22,32].

The expression of AR and its relevance to lung ADC have not been well characterized yet. Several studies demonstrated AR expression in non-small cell carcinomas, which suggested the role of AR status in lung cancer [33,34]. However, the results of studies conducted through this theoretical background were inconsistent. Berardi et al. [35] demonstrated a better OS in female non-small cell carcinoma patients with AR expression in carcinoma cells compared to those with tumors showing no AR expression. In contrast, Grant et al. [36] demonstrated that AR expression has no association with recurrence or survival in modification with the Ki-67 labeling index. In the present study, only one case expressed AR receptor positivity and therefore cannot be interpreted because of the small number.

EGFR has been identified to be upregulated in > 60% of non-small cell carcinomas [37] and is considered to serve an important role in the survival and proliferation of tumor cells. The EGFR signaling pathway is influenced by estrogen-activated ERβ signaling on the cell membrane. Estrogen activates the PI3K/AKT and the MEK/ERK signaling pathways, which are downstream pathways of EGFR activation, and facilitates lung cancer metastasis through epithelial-mesenchymal transition [38,39]. However, a study evaluating the association between the expression of ERs and EGFR mutation in lung ADC failed to demonstrate a significant result [32].

In the present study, the expression of EGFR and female sex hormone receptors was evaluated. The IHC evaluation for receptor expression revealed no significant association between female sex hormone receptors and EGFR in lung ADCs. This result was different from the negative association that has generally been observed between the expression of female sex hormone receptors and EGFR in breast cancer [40-42]; further studies with a larger sample size may be required to validate this result.

The present study also aimed to demonstrate the association between female sex hormone receptor expression and EGFR mutation; however, although a negative association was observed, statistical significance could not be achieved.

When the expression patterns of ERα and ERβ were subdivided into groups according to age, sex, or tumor stage, and Kaplan-Meier plotting with the log-rank test was performed, the association between ERβ-expressing tumors in men and better prognosis that was previously reported in some studies [11,12] was not observed in the present study. PR expression was detected in 54.8% of cases in tumor cell nuclei. PR expression exhibited no significant association with any of the clinicopathological features, and in the survival analysis, no significant differences were observed. The EGFR L858R mutation detected by immunohistochemistry was significantly associated with certain clinicopathological features such as age < 65 years, female sex, and no smoking history, which also exhibited well-known associations with molecularly detected EGFR mutation.

In conclusion, the present study investigated the expression of the female sex hormone receptors ERα, ERβ, and PR in lung ADCs. The expression of each receptor exhibited associations with certain clinicopathological features and prognostic factors; however, in multivariate analysis, none of the female sex hormone receptors were significantly associated with patient survival.

ORCID
Jin Hwan Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-3647-7487
Han Kyeom Kim: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-6750-8528
Bong Kyung Shin: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-9017-2831

Author Contributions
Conceptualization: JHL, BKS.
Data curation: JHL, BKS.
Formal analysis: JHL.
Investigation: JHL, BKS.
Methodology: JHL.
Project administration: HKK, BKS.
Resources: BKS.
Supervision: HKK.
Validation: JHL, BKS.
Visualization: JHL.
Writing—original draft: JHL.
Writing—review & editing: BKS.
Conflicts of Interest

The authors declare that they have no potential conflicts of interest.

Funding

No funding to declare.

REFERENCES

ER, αER, and PR in lung adenocarcinoma


Comparison of papanicolaou smear and human papillomavirus (HPV) test as cervical screening tools: can we rely on HPV test alone as a screening method? An 11-year retrospective experience at a single institution

Myunghee Kang, Seung Yeon Ha, Hyun Yee Cho, Dong Hae Chung, Na Rae Kim, Jungsuk An, Sangho Lee, Jae Yeon Seok, Juhyeon Jeong
Department of Pathology, Gil Medical Center, Gachon University College of Medicine, Incheon, Korea

Background: The decrease in incidence of cervical dysplasia and carcinoma has not been as dramatic as expected with the development of improved research tools and test methods. The human papillomavirus (HPV) test alone has been suggested for screening in some countries. The National Cancer Screening Project in Korea has applied Papanicolaou smears (Pap smears) as the screening method for cervical dysplasia and carcinoma. We evaluated the value of Pap smear and HPV testing as diagnostic screening tools in a single institution.

Methods: Patients co-tested with HPV test and Pap smear simultaneously or within one month of each other were included in this study. Patients with only punch biopsy results were excluded because of sampling errors. A total of 999 cases were included, and the collected reports encompassed results of smear cytology, HPV subtypes, and histologic examinations.

Results: Sensitivity and specificity of detecting high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (HSIL) and squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) were higher for Pap smears than for HPV tests (sensitivity, 97.14%; specificity, 88.32%; specificity, 54.92% for HPV tests). HPV tests and Pap smears did not differ greatly in detection of low-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (85.35% for HPV test, 80.31% for Pap smears). When atypical glandular cells were noted on Pap smears, the likelihood for histologic diagnosis of adenocarcinoma following Pap smear was higher than that of high-risk HPV test results (18.8 and 1.53, respectively).

Conclusions: Pap smears were more useful than HPV tests in the diagnosis of HSIL, SCC, and glandular lesions.

Key Words: Uterine cervical neoplasms; Papanicolaou test; Human papillomavirus DNA tests; Early detection of cancer; Sensitivity

Uterine cervical cancer is a well-understood malignancy. Information about the carcinogenesis, diagnosis, and vaccine prevention of cervical cancer is now available [1]. However, cervical cancer remains the third most common cause of death among females worldwide [2]. The incidence and mortality rates are diverse and are influenced by screening tests and public health infrastructure [2]. The incidence and mortality rates in Eastern Africa are about ten times higher than in Western Asia [2]. However, the incidence of cervical dysplasia and carcinoma have not decreased dramatically in areas with well-established public health programs. In developed countries, the estimated number of new cases has not decreased in four years, while the estimated number of deaths has increased from 33,500 cases in GLOBOCAN 2008 to 34,700 cases in GLOBOCAN 2012 [2,3].

For detection and treatment in the early stages, nationwide screening tests are needed. The Papanicolaou smear (Pap smears) was adopted as a screening test in 1999 for the National Cancer Screening Project in Korea. The Pap smear is performed biyearly in females over the age of thirty [4]. However, the use of human papillomavirus (HPV) DNA test as a screening method has been considered more helpful for protection against invasive cervical carcinomas in some studies [5]. The HPV DNA test has also been suggested as a screening method in some countries [6-8]. In the United States, some institutions proposed co-testing with Pap smears and HPV as a screening method [9]. In this study, we evaluated the value of Pap smears and HPV testing at a single institution.
MATERIALS AND METHODS

Case selection
The medical records of 204,588 Pap smear cases at Gil Medical Center during the 11-year period from May 2006 to September 2017 were collected and retrospectively studied. Among these, 15,762 cases were HPV/Pap smear co-testing. Patients underwent HPV testing and Pap smears at the same time or within one month of each other. A total of 2,491 cases additionally underwent histologic evaluation. Patients with only punch biopsy results were excluded because of sampling errors. Inclusion criteria of the histologic results were reports of biopsies performed within 3 months of Pap smears and HPV testing. A total of 999 cases were included to include the results of smear cytology, HPV subtypes, and histologic examinations. Information on patient age, Pap smear results, HPV subtypes, surgical procedures, and pathologic results were collected.

Pap smear evaluation
Both conventional smear and liquid base preparations (Thin Prep Pap test, Cytotec Corporation, Boxborough, MA, USA) were included. Each case was reviewed by one cytotechnologist and one pathologist. The results were reported using the Bethesda system [10].

HPV subtype testing
During the 11-year period, the MyHPV chip kit (from March 2006 to February 2012, MyGene Co., Seoul, Korea), HPV DNA Chip (from March 2012 to February 2014, BioMedLab Inc., Chuncheon, Korea), and BMT HPV 9G DNA KIT (from March 2014 to September 2017, Biometrix Technology Inc., Chuncheon, Korea) were used to detect HPV. HPV tests were performed according to the manufacturer’s instructions. Results were reported as positive or negative and as high-risk (HPV-16, 18, 26, 31, 33, 34, 35, 39, 45, 51, 52, 53, 56, 58, 59, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 73) or low-risk (HPV-3, 6, 10, 11, 27, 32, 40, 42, 43, 44, 54, 55, 57, 61, 62, 72, 74) subtypes. Cases showing HPV-negativity on the chip scanner but positivity under electrophoresis, i.e., not specified, were categorized as “other” after one repeat examination.

Histologic evaluation
When abnormal results were noted on cytology and/or HPV test, additional surgical procedures were performed after considering patient age, childbearing plans, and associated gynecologic diseases. If any patient had more than two pathologic results, the higher degree of abnormality was selected.

Statistical analysis
To evaluate the diagnostic accuracy, sensitivity, specificity, positive/negative likelihood ratio, and odds ratio were calculated along with their 95% confidence intervals (CI) [11]. Cohen’s kappa coefficient (κ) was calculated using SPSS ver. 21.0 software (IBM Corp., Armonk, NY, USA). The χ was interpreted categorically following the Fleiss guidelines of poor (κ < 0.4), fair/good (κ = 0.40 to 0.75), and perfect (κ > 0.75) [12].

Ethics statement
This study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board (IRB) of Gil Medical Center (No. GBIRB2019-015). Formal written informed consent was not required due to a waiver from the appropriate IRB.

RESULTS

Characteristics of cases
A total of 999 cases fulfilled the inclusion criteria. Mean age was 46 years (range, 16 to 92 years). High-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion (HSIL) was the most common cytologic finding (473 cases, 46.7%), followed by low-grade intraepithelial lesion (LSIL) (137 cases, 13.5%) and negative for intraepithelial lesion or malignancy (NILM) (131 cases, 12.9%). There were about five times more HPV positive cases than HPV-negative cases (830 cases, 83.1%). Cervical conization was performed more commonly than hysterectomy (723 cases, 72.4%). Severe dysplasia/squamous carcinoma in situ (CIS) were the most common histologic findings (424 cases, 42.2%). Clinicopathologic characteristics of patients are summarized in Table 1.

Detection of squamous cell carcinomas and HSIL
When HSIL cells were present on smear cytology, i.e., in cases of atypical squamous cells, cannot exclude HSIL (ASC-H), HSIL, and squamous cell carcinoma (SCC), the sensitivity was 97.14% (95% CI, 95.41 to 98.23) and specificity was 85.58% (95% CI, 77.56 to 91.06). The sensitivity and specificity of high-risk HPV type test (sensitivity, 88.52%; specificity, 54.92%) were lower than that of Pap smears. These results are shown in Table 2. Sixteen cases showed benign cellular changes in the Pap smears (16/654, 2.45%), and 69 cases gave negative results on HPV tests (69/654, 10.55%). Seven cases gave negative results on both the Pap smears and the HPV tests (7/654, 1.07%).
Detection of LSIL, including koilocytosis

When atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance (ASCUS) or LSIL were identified in Pap smears, the sensitivity for LSIL detection was 80.31% (95% CI, 72.55 to 86.30) and the specificity was 68.46% (95% CI, 60.04 to 75.82). High and low-risk HPV tests (83.35%; 95% CI, 78.98 to 90.04) had higher sensitivity for detection of LSIL lesions than Pap smears; however, the CI overlapped. These results are shown in Table 2. Twenty-five cases had negative results on Pap smears (25/157, 15.92%), and 23 cases showed non-HPV infection (23/157, 14.65%). Four cases were negative by both Pap smear and HPV test (4/157, 2.55%).

Detection of glandular lesions

For detection of adenocarcinoma in situ (AIS) or adenocarcinoma, Pap smears were an excellent diagnostic tool. The sensitivity of the Pap smear was 100% (95% CI, 86.68 to 100) and specificity was 94.68% (95% CI, 88.15 to 97.71). The sensitivity of high-risk type HPV test was 68.97% (95% CI, 50.77 to 82.72) and specificity was 54.92% (95% CI, 46.07 to 63.46). Nine cases were negative for HPV (9/30, 30%). No cases were normal on Pap smears. Among nine HPV-negative cases, four revealed adenocarcinomas of endometrial origin and five were endocervical adenocarcinomas or AIS. One endocervical AIS case was accompanied by CIS.

False positivity of Pap smears and HPV tests

A total of 150 cases showed normal histologic results. Among them, 22 cases were diagnosed as abnormal by Pap smears (22/150, 14.67%), and high-risk HPV was detected in 44 cases (44/150, 29.33%). LSIL was the most common diagnosis from Pap smears (16 cases), followed by HSIL (3 cases), atypical glandular cells (2 cases), and ASC-H (1 case). Of 999 total cases in this study, 16 cases had positive results on Pap smears and high-risk HPV but negative histologic results (16/999, 1.6%).

Comparison of discrepancies between Pap smears and HPV test

Among 999 cases, 180 showed discrepancies between cytology and HPV tests. The proportion of positivity on Pap smears was higher than that in HPV tests (86.89% and 83.08%, respectively), and κ was 0.30 (95% CI, 0.22 to 0.37). The κ between Pap smears and histologic results was 0.57 (95% CI, 0.50 to 0.65). The κ between HPV test and histologic results was 0.31 (95% CI, 0.23 to 0.39). These results are shown in Table 3.

DISCUSSION

The present study was performed at a single institution in Korea to evaluate the value of Pap smears and HPV DNA tests for diagnosing cervical neoplasms. Pap smears had higher sensitivity and specificity than HPV DNA tests for HSIL, SCC, and glandular lesions. The sensitivity of HPV tests for LSIL was higher than that of Pap smears; however, the difference was not significant because of overlapping CI. Odds ratios of Pap smears were higher than that of HPV tests for all histologic categories. This study showed higher sensitivity and specificity for Pap smears compared with previously reported studies (sensitivity,
Comparison between Pap smear and HPV test

49%–84%; specificity, 45%–84%) [13-16]. Sensitivity and specificity of high-risk HPV tests were similar in previous studies (sensitivity, 74%–96%; specificity, 59%–80%) [13-16]. This is explained by the multiple review systems used in this study. Rules of the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA) 1988 mandated 10% random rescreening process in cases of NILM category of the Bethesda system were applied. However, many slides were actually reviewed to train pathology residents or cytotechnologists. More than one pathologist, each with more than five years of experience, reviewed almost all cases. Most cases in this study were from the period without HPV vaccination. Quadrivalent HPV vaccines were approved in Korea in 2006, and a nationwide vaccination program was adopted in 2016. Vaccine effects require more time to stop carcinogenesis [17]. In addition, the prevalence of LSIL or HSIL in this specific hospital was higher than that in most other institutions, as reported in nationwide screening results [18]. Between 2009 and 2014, the diagnostic rates of LSIL and HSIL were 1.32% and 0.62%, respectively, at our hospital. In the Korea nationwide survey, the diagnostic rates of LSIL and HSIL were 0.24% and 0.14%, respectively [18]. There is a higher chance of encountering squamous intraepithelial lesions in the clinical field at tertiary referral hospitals. The thorough slide review might have led to the high specificity and sensitivity of Pap smears. Furthermore, the number of detectable HPV subtypes increased with changes in HPV test kits three times, from 24 subtypes in 2006 to 38 subtypes in 2017.

False-negative rates of HPV tests were higher than those of Pap smears for SCC, HSIL, and glandular lesions. In cases of negative HPV detection results and HSIL/SCC in surgical specimens, HPV DNA test samples were re-examined through formalin-fixed paraffin embedded blocks. In this study, 10.55% of HSIL/SCC cases (69/654) were not detected through HPV tests. Among these, 51 cases were diagnosed as ASC-H/HSIL/SCC (51/69, 73.91%) from Pap smears and 11 were diagnosed as LSIL/ASCUS (11/69, 15.94%). Only seven cases were NILM on Pap smears (7/69, 10.15%). This might have been due to a low viral load or HPV-negative squamous cell carcinoma [19-21]. It has been suggested that progression of cervical dysplasia does not require continuous HPV replication. Therefore, the degree of dysplasia does not correlate with HPV load. About 5% of SCCs are HPV-negative [21]. In the present study, HPV-negative SCCs constituted 9.65% (11/114) of SCCs. Among these, only one case showed normal cytology on Pap smear. When us-

### Table 2. Sensitivity, specificity, positive LR, negative LR and OR with histologic confirmation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Histologic results</th>
<th>Sensitivity</th>
<th>Specificity</th>
<th>Positive LR</th>
<th>Negative LR</th>
<th>OR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCC/HSIL ASC-H/HSIL/SCC on Pap smear</td>
<td>97.14 (95.41–98.23)</td>
<td>85.58 (77.56–91.06)</td>
<td>6.74 (4.22–10.76)</td>
<td>0.03 (0.02–0.05)</td>
<td>201.73 (96.33–422.48)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hrHPV+</td>
<td>88.32 (85.48–90.67)</td>
<td>54.92 (46.07–63.46)</td>
<td>1.96 (1.61–2.39)</td>
<td>0.21 (0.16–0.28)</td>
<td>9.22 (5.96–14.25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSIL</td>
<td>80.31 (72.55–86.30)</td>
<td>68.46 (60.04–75.82)</td>
<td>2.55 (1.95–3.33)</td>
<td>0.29 (0.20–0.42)</td>
<td>8.86 (4.99–15.71)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPV+a ASCUS/LSIL on Pap smear</td>
<td>85.35 (78.98–90.04)</td>
<td>44.67 (36.94–52.66)</td>
<td>1.54 (1.32–1.81)</td>
<td>0.33 (0.22–0.50)</td>
<td>4.7 (2.72–8.13)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIS, adenocarcinoma</td>
<td>100 (86.68–100)</td>
<td>94.68 (88.15–97.71)</td>
<td>18.8 (8.01–44.11)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glandular cell abnormality on Pap smear</td>
<td>68.97 (50.77–82.72)</td>
<td>54.92 (46.07–63.46)</td>
<td>1.530 (1.12–2.09)</td>
<td>0.57 (0.32–0.99)</td>
<td>2.71 (1.14–6.42)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Numbers in parentheses indicate 95% confidence interval.

LR, likelihood ratio; OR, odds ratio; SCC, squamous cell carcinoma; HSIL, high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesion; ASC-H, atypical squamous cells, cannot exclude HSIL; hr, high-risk; LSIL, low-grade intraepithelial lesion; ASCUS, atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance; Pap smear, Papanicolaou smear; HPV, human papillomavirus; AIS, adenocarcinoma in situ; NA, not available.

*aHPV included low- and high-risk HPV types.

### Table 3. Kappa coefficients of Pap smear, HPV and histology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>κ</th>
<th>Standard error of κ</th>
<th>95% confidence interval</th>
<th>The strength of agreementa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pap smear</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.22–0.37</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPV</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.50–0.65</td>
<td>Fair/good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Histology</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.23–0.39</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pap smear and/or HPV</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.33–0.50</td>
<td>Fair/good</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pap smear, Papanicolaou smear; HPV, human papillomavirus.

*aThese categories were classified by Fleiss guidelines.
ing Pap smear to detect SCC, the false-negative rate was 0.88%.

In this study, Pap smears proved more promising than HPV tests to detect glandular lesions. In addition, 16.6% of endocervical AIS or adenocarcinoma cases (5/30) were negative on HPV tests. These findings are in agreement with previous observations on the existence of HPV-negative endocervical adenocarcinoma (about 15%) [22]. The Pap smears and histologic slides of five cases of HPV-negative endocervical AIS/adenocarcinoma were reviewed. Three cases were endometrioid type adenocarcinoma and one was gastric type adenocarcinoma [23]. Gastric type adenocarcinoma is an HPV-unrelated cancer, and endometrioid type adenocarcinoma is commonly associated with cervical endometriosis. We did not identify cervical endometriosis in these three cases. The relationship between endocervical adenocarcinoma, endometrioid adenocarcinoma, and HPV infection is not fully understood [22-24]. One case diagnosed as cervical AIS was accompanied by squamous CIS. The negative HPV test result may have been a false-negative. Among the nine cases of HPV-negative adenocarcinoma in this study, four cases revealed an endometrial origin. These cases presented with vaginal bleeding, and Pap smears and HPV tests were initially performed with colposcopic examination. Ultrasonography and endometrial biopsy or curettage usually follow in the routine clinical setting. Endometrial dilation and curettage are performed under anesthesia; however, Pap smears are easily performed. Similar to previously reported results, we found that Pap smears were useful in detection of glandular lesions [25].

Co-testing of Pap smears and HPV yielded higher sensitivity and specificity in detection of HSIL than one test alone in some previous studies [26-28]. In the present study, sensitivity (98.91%; 95% CI, 97.75 to 99.47) was higher but specificity (44.55%; 95% CI, 35.60 to 53.86) was lower than with a single test alone. This may result from high false-positive rates in this study pool. Transient HPV infection was considered one reason for the high false-positive rate. About 90% of infections were eliminated within three years [29]. Additionally, some previously treated lesions showed atypical cells on Pap smears during the wound healing period, which may be diagnosed as ASCUS or LSIL on Pap smear. Among 20 cases of false positives on Pap smears and HPV tests, three cases were diagnosed as HSIL, and two cases demonstrated glandular cell abnormality on cytology. One case of HSIL presented with marked inflammatory cells and red blood cells on the smear; therefore, misinterpretation could have occurred due to artifact. In the two other cases of HSIL, the patient had previously undergone conization. The Pap smears and HPV tests in this study were follow-up examina-

## ORCID

Myunghee Kang: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4083-888X
Seung Yeon Ha: https://orcid.org/0000-0001-7071-1623
Hyun Yee Cho: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-3603-5750
Dong Hae Chung: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-4538-0989
Na Rae Kim: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-2793-6856
Jungsuk An: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-0312-2460
Sangho Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4636-7521
Jae Yeon Seok: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-9567-6796
Juhyeon Jeong: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-8665-0295

## Author Contributions

Conceptualization: SYH.
Data curation: JJ.
Formal analysis: SL.
Investigation: JYS.
Methodology: DHC.
Project administration: NRK.
Supervision: SYH, HYC.
Validation: JA.
Visualization: JYS.
Writing—original draft: MK, SYH.
Writing—review & editing: MK, SYH.

Conflicts of Interest
S.Y.H., a contributing editor of the Journal of Pathology and Translational Medicine, was not involved in the editorial evaluation or decision to publish this article. All remaining authors have declared no conflicts of interest.

Funding
This research was supported by The Korean Society for Cytology Grant.

REFERENCES


Morules, or morule-like features, can be identified in both benign and malignant lesions in various organs. Morular features are unusual in pulmonary adenocarcinoma cases. Here, we describe two cases of pulmonary adenocarcinoma with morule-like features in Korean women. One patient had a non-mucinous-type adenocarcinoma in situ and the other had an acinar-predominant adenocarcinoma with a micropapillary component. Both patients showed multiple intra-alveolar, nodular, whorled proliferative foci composed of atypical spindle cells with eosinophilic cytoplasm. Targeted next-generation sequencing was performed on DNA extracted from formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded samples of the tumors. Results showed unusual epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) mutations, which are associated with drug resistance to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors, revealing the importance of identifying morule-like features in pulmonary adenocarcinoma and the need for additional study, since there are few reported cases.

**Key Words:** Morule-like features; Pulmonary adenocarcinoma; Next-generation sequencing; Epidermal growth factor receptor

---

**CASE REPORT**

The Institutional Review Board of Korea University Anam Hospital (2018AN0182) approved this study, and we received informed consent from both patients.

**Case 1**

A healthy, 78-year-old Korean woman was admitted to the hospital with an incidental mass in the left lung. The computed tomography (CT) scan of the left upper lung showed a sub-solid nodule measuring 23 mm in diameter, suggestive of AIS or minimally invasive adenocarcinoma. The patient had no surgical history, had never smoked, and was relatively healthy. A segmentectomy was performed to remove the pulmonary mass. Grossly, the resected lung measured $10.3 \times 5.3 \times 4.5$ cm and weighed 30 g in total. The pleural surface of the mass was smooth. The tumor measured $2.2 \times 1.8$ cm, was fibrotic and whitish and grey colored without hemorrhage or necrosis, and did not involve the pleura. Hematoxylin and eosin–stained histology sections showed lepidic growth of atypical columnar cells with enlarged nuclei and irregular nuclear contours (Fig. 1A). There were multiple intra-alveolar nodular proliferative foci composed of atypical spindle cells with eosinophilic cytoplasm (Fig. 1B). Cells in the nodular proliferative lesions were arranged in a whorled pattern, normally interpreted with a squamous appearance, yet obvious squamous differentiation was not seen. The underlying pulmonary architecture was preserved, which suggested that stromal invasive foci...
were not present. Neither lymphovascular nor pleural invasion was evident; therefore, the final diagnosis was non-mucinous type AIS. Upon immunohistochemistry, the cells forming morule-like features were positive for thyroid transcription factor 1 (TTF-1) and cytokeratin (CK), but negative for p40, CDX-2, neuron-specific enolase, chromogranin, and synaptophysin (Fig. 1B, inset). There were no remarkable features in normal lung tissue. We also performed NGS analysis and revealed an insertion in epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) exon 20 (NM_001346897.1: c.2180_2185dup) with 35.5% mutation abundance. There was no evidence of recurrence or metastasis at 1-year follow-up.

**Case 2**

A healthy, 46-year-old Korean woman was admitted to the hospital with an incidental mass in one lung. The CT scan of the right lower lung showed a sub-solid nodule measuring 29 mm in diameter with a 12-mm-sized solid portion. The mass was associated with apical pleural thickening, suggestive of a malignant tumor with pleural invasion. The patient had no surgical history, had never smoked, and was relatively healthy. A lobectomy was performed to remove the sub-solid nodule from the right lower lung. Grossly, the resected lung specimen was $16.9 \times 14.5 \times 4.3$ cm. The pleural surface showed umbilicated foci, suggestive of pleural invasion. Upon sectioning, the cut surface showed an ill-demarcated, whitish-grey, fibrotic mass measuring $2.7 \times 1.3$ cm with pleural invasion. Upon microscopic examination, the tumor was identified as an acinar-predominant adenocarcinoma with a micropapillary component. In the region of the acinar-predominant adenocarcinoma, multiple

![Fig. 1. Microscopic findings of the tumor. (A) The case of adenocarcinoma in situ shows lepidic growth of atypical columnar cells without definite evidence of stromal invasion. (B) Multiple nodular proliferative lesions in intra-alveolar spaces. The cells in those structures are atypical spindle cells that are positive for thyroid transcription factor 1 immunostaining (inset). (C) The acinar-predominant adenocarcinoma case shows multiple foci of morule-like components (D) floating within the intra-alveolar space.](image-url)
Morules in pulmonary adenocarcinoma

Adenocarcinoma with morule-like features is a rare variant of lung adenocarcinoma, accounting for 1.9% of all adenocarcinomas [2]. To date, 26 cases of lung adenocarcinoma with morule-like features have been reported [1-5] that were reported as papillary (15 cases), micropapillary (3 cases), acinar (3 cases), and solid-predominant adenocarcinoma (3 cases). The remaining two cases were adenocarcinoma with a lepidic pattern [2], and bronchioloalveolar carcinoma (AIS) [3].

Histologically, the cells comprising the morular feature were spindle shaped and distinct from the other cancer cells. There are several possibilities to explain the pathophysiology of this unusual morular component. Traditionally, morules have been reported in pulmonary blastoma and well-differentiated fetal adenocarcinoma, and are regarded as non-epithelial cell clusters showing neuronal differentiation [1,6]. However, morular cells in the cases reported here were positive for pulmonary epithelial markers, including CK and TTF-1, but negative for neuroendocrine markers, consistent with several other reports [1-3,5]. As such, they can be considered a complex glandular component, or epithelial cell nodules. Therefore, the presence of a morular component in small biopsy specimens does not, by itself, indicate pulmonary blastoma and immunohistochemistry can help to determine the likelihood of epithelial carcinoma. Furthermore, although the morular cells are spindle shaped, Moran et al. [5] reported that negative results for muscle markers and human melanoma black-45 reduce the probability of smooth muscle tumor and lymphangioleiomyomatosis.

Fornelli et al. [3] reported the first case of AIS with morule-like features as a non-invasive tumor because both architectural complexity and stromal desmoplasia were not apparent. Fornelli’s case is the only report currently available in the literature, making our reported cases the second study of AIS showing morule-like features. Tsuta et al. [2] found that lung adenocarcinomas with morule-like features have lower 5-year overall survival rates, suggesting that morule-like features are an invasive component similar to an aggressive histologic micropapillary pattern. On the other hand, one report suggested that the morular feature itself might not have prognostic significance [7], and the invasion criteria for the pulmonary adenocarcinoma used in World Health Organization 2015 classification of tumors of the lung, pleura, thymus, and heart does not include morular features. Therefore, if there is no other evidence of stromal invasion, AIS with morular features should be evaluated separately from the invasive adenocarcinoma. This case of AIS did not show any evidence of recurrence or metastasis at 1-year follow-up; however, further studies of AIS with morule-like features are needed.

Depending on the observer, morular like components filling the intra-alveolar space can be considered as an invasive lesion, or an airspace invasion forming a solid nest. From that point of view, case 1 described here can be diagnosed as lepidic predominant adenocarcinoma, as morular portion size is 0.7 cm in maximum diameter. However, further research will be needed as some argue that there is no prognostic significance [7].

The molecular characteristics of the morular component are not fully understood. However, several studies have revealed that this feature is associated with EGFR mutations. In a previous report that analyzed two common EGFR mutations, including deletions in exon 19 and a point mutation at codon 858 in exon 21 (L858R), the presence of morule-like components correlated with EGFR mutations, particularly deletions, and was reported to be an independent predictive factor of EGFR mutation status [2]. Another report by Tajima and Koda [4] found that morule-like features were associated with a deletion mutation at exon 19 in EGFR. Ours is the first report in which NGS was used to identify the molecular characteristics of morule-like features in pulmonary adenocarcinoma. Our results revealed unusual EGFR mutations that have not been previously reported in pulmonary adenocarcinoma with morule-like features. The rare mutation in EGFR exon 19 and the insertion mutation in EGFR exon 20 can be associated with drug resistance to EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitors [8-10], implying the importance of identifying morule-like features in pulmonary adenocarcinoma.
Morule-like components are a rare histologic feature of pulmonary adenocarcinoma, which may be associated with rare EGFR mutations, such as the L747S missense mutation of exon 19 or an insertion mutation in exon 20. The presence of morule-like features without definite invasive components led to the diagnosis of AIS in one of these cases, as it is not yet clear whether this feature needs to be considered as an invasive component. Additional studies are needed to clarify the significance of this rare histologic variant in pulmonary adenocarcinoma.

ORCID
Yoo Jin Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-3830-7051
Harim Oh: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4904-4015
Eojin Kim: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-3111-6754
Bokyung Ahn: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-0229-2276
Jeong Hyeon Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-2041-4617
Youngseek Lee: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-9762-4957
Yang Seok Chae: https://orcid.org/0000-0002-8801-0910
Chul Hwan Kim: https://orcid.org/0000-0003-2026-8824

Author Contributions
Conceptualization: YJL, CHK.
Data curation: EK, BA.
Investigation: YJL, HO.
Project administration: YJL, JHL.
Resources: YL, YSC.
Supervision: YSC, CHK.
Validation: YL, YSC.
Visualization: YJL, JHL.
Writing – original draft: YJL.
Writing – review & editing: CHK.

Conflicts of Interest
The authors declare that they have no potential conflicts of interest.

Funding
No funding to declare.

REFERENCES
Tall columnar cells can be seen in different variants of papillary thyroid carcinoma (PTC). Tall cell variant of PTC shows elongated and closely packed follicles lined by a single layer of tall cells producing a so-called “tram-track” appearance (A). High-power view showing tall cells (at least twice as tall as wide) with nuclear features of PTC, intensely eosinophilic cytoplasm, and sharply delineated cell borders. The nuclei are basally located (B). Columnar cell variant of PTC shows tightly packed papillae lined by pseudostratified tall columnar cells with elongated dark nuclei. The nuclear features of PTC are not evident (C). Cribriform-morular variant of PTC showing pseudostratified tall columnar cells with abundant eosinophilic cytoplasm and elongated dark nuclei. The solid area shows a small whorl (morule) of squamoid tumor cells with peculiar nuclear clearing (D).